

An
Introduction
to
Latin Prose


G. W. Mitchell

" Neither a borrower nor a lender be."

The Library of
John G. MacEachern

Case Sec. Class No.

" Piu tosto mendicante che ignoranti "



Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2009 with funding from
Ontario Council of University Libraries

<http://www.archive.org/details/introductiontola00mitc>

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE

BY
GEORGE W. MITCHELL, M.A.

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF LATIN AND GREEK
QUEEN'S UNIVERSITY, KINGSTON,
ONTARIO

Toronto

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY OF CANADA, LIMITED

LONDON : MACMILLAN & CO., LIMITED
NEW YORK : THE MACMILLAN COMPANY

1907

Entered according to Act of the Parliament of Canada, in the year one thousand
nine hundred and seven, by The Macmillan Company of Canada, Limited,
at the Department of Agriculture.

PREFACE

The aim of this book is to present a method by which the student of Latin may be trained from the very beginning to look beyond *words* to *ideas*. Constructions and idioms are therefore introduced as rapidly as the average student is capable of mastering them, and grammatical forms are reduced to a minimum. The First and Second Person of the verb, the Vocative and Locative Cases, together with all irregularities in the declension of Nouns, Adjectives and Pronouns, may very well be left till the student comes to read his first author. The verb, as being the part of speech which is most necessary for the expression of ideas, is given the most important place in the grammatical scheme, while the other parts of speech are taken up only as they are required for new constructions or idioms. If the teacher finds that these constructions and idioms are too rapidly introduced for the ability of his class, he should review frequently by giving sentences of his own, and these sentences should always be as idiomatic as his pupils are capable of understanding. Suitable material for such review exercises will be found in the extracts from Mommsen's "History of Rome," at the end of the book.

The characters "j" and "v" for consonantal "i"

and “u” seem less distracting to beginners, and have been adopted throughout.

To suit the constructions in Lessons III., IV. and V., the Accusative Case is given before the Genitive, but after Lesson V. it is placed after the Dative in conformity with the usual practice in this country.

No general English-Latin vocabulary is given. To give one would be to defeat the main object of the book. The teacher should supply vocabulary only after the pupil has expressed the English idiom in the form required by the Latin.

I wish to express my warmest thanks to Professor Alex. Souter, of Mansfield College, Oxford, for correcting the proofs of the whole book.

G. W. M.

KINGSTON, *August*, 1907.

TABLE OF CONTENTS



	PAGE
Lessons	7
Appendix	246
Vocabulary	253
Index	293

AN INTRODUCTION TO LATIN PROSE.

LESSON I.

Africa	<i>Africa</i>	pugna	<i>a fight</i>
Britannia	<i>Britain</i>	Roma	<i>Rome</i>
copia	<i>plenty</i>	statua	<i>statue</i>
fama ¹	<i>a report</i>	terra	<i>earth</i>
insula	<i>island</i>	est	<i>is</i>
Italia	<i>Italy</i>	erat	<i>was</i>
nauta	<i>sailor (seaman)</i>	non	<i>not</i>
pecunia	<i>money (a sum of money)</i>	in	<i>in</i>

¹There is no word in Latin for "a" or "the." *Fama* means report, a report, or the report, whichever suits the sentence best.

The teacher should explain what is meant by long and short syllables in Latin, and the pupil should learn the following rules for accenting Latin words:

1. A word of two syllables has the accent on the first syllable, whether that syllable is long or short: as, *fáma*.

2. A word of more than two syllables has the accent on the second last syllable, if it be long; but if the second last syllable is short, the accent is on the third last, as, *Románu*s, *ínsula*.

The pupil should mark the quantities for himself as the teacher pronounces the word. The quantities are indicated in the General Vocabulary at the end of the book.

Translate into English:

1. Pugna est in Africa.¹
2. Pugna erat in Africa.
3. Pugna erat in Italia.
4. Britannia est insula.
5. Africa non est insula.
6. Nauta non est in Britannia.
7. Nauta est in Africa.
8. Nauta erat in insula.
9. Nauta non erat in Africa.
10. Pugna erat in Britannia.
11. Italia non est insula.
12. Nauta est in insula.

¹A battle is in Africa, the battle is in Africa, or there is a battle in Africa. The word "there" is not expressed in Latin in sentences of this kind.

LESSON II.

Translate into Latin:

1. Rome is in Italy.
2. There is a battle in Italy.
3. There was a rumour in Britain.
4. The mariner was not in the island.
5. Caesar was in Britain.
6. There is an image in the island.
7. There is money in Africa.
8. There is abundance in the land.
9. Rome is not in Britain.
10. There is a rumour in Africa.
11. There is money to be found in Africa.²

²Never mind the mere wording. Translate the *meaning*. Compare this sentence with 7.

LESSON III.

1. Latin nouns have five cases: Nominative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative and Ablative.¹

2. The first three are distinguished from each other thus:

Nominative—*nauta*, a sailor.

Accusative—*nautam*.

Genitive—*nautae*.

3. (a) A noun is in the Nominative when it is the subject of a verb.

(b) A noun is in the Accusative when it is the object of the action described in the sentence.

(c) When in English a phrase composed of a preposition and a noun depends on another noun, the noun in the prepositional phrase stands in the Genitive. The English preposition is not translated.²

N.B.—The Possessive Case in English is always equal to such a prepositional phrase, *e.g.*, Minerva's temple is equal to the "the temple of Minerva." Therefore the Genitive in Latin will translate the English Possessive.

¹The Vocative and Locative will be considered later.

²The Genitive may be regarded as the *Adjective Case*. Examine the following: The temple of Minerva, the war against the Helvetii, grief for his son. The phrases "of Minerva," "against the Helvetii," "for his son," have all the value of an *adjective*, and the noun in each of them would stand in the Genitive.

VOCABULARY.

industria	<i>diligence</i>	Minerva	<i>Minerva</i> (name of a goddess)
victoria	<i>victory</i>		
praeda	<i>booty</i>	Caesar	<i>Caesar</i>
agricola	<i>farmer</i>	Hannibal	<i>Hannibal</i>
advena	<i>stranger</i>	laudat	<i>praises</i>
dea	<i>goddess</i>	occupat	<i>seizes</i>
Diana	<i>Diana</i> (name of a goddess)	erat	<i>was</i>

Translate into English: .

1. Caesar erat in Britannia. 2. Hannibal non erat in Britannia. 3. Minerva erat dea. 4. Nauta Dianam laudat.¹ 5. Diana nautam laudat. 6. Minerva industriam nautae laudat. 7. Nauta statuam deae laudat. 8. Hannibal victoriam advenae non laudat. 9. Dea advenam laudat.

¹Observe the order of the words in a Latin sentence.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar was in Italy. 2. The image of the goddess is in Asia. 3. Diana extols the sailor. 4. Caesar takes possession of² the island. 5. The sailor praises the statue. 6. Diana approves of the victory³ of the foreigner. 7. Caesar extols the industry of the seaman. 8. There was an image of Diana in Asia. 9. There was a report of a victory. 10. Diana is praised⁴ by the sailor.

²Question.—What words describe the action which is performed?

Answer.—“Takes possession of.”

Question.—What is the object of that action?

Answer.—Island.

Question.—What case then is “island” in Latin?

Answer.—Accusative.

³Why is “victory” not Genitive here, as it is in 9?

⁴The Passive Voice is not to be used yet.

LESSON IV.

1. Latin has two numbers, Singular and Plural. If the subject is Plural the verb is Plural.

2. The Plural of the Nominative, Accusative and Genitive is formed thus:

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> incola, <i>inhabitant</i>	incolae, <i>inhabitants</i>
<i>Acc.</i> incolam	incolas
<i>Gen.</i> incolae	incolarum

VOCABULARY.

indigena	<i>a native</i>
silva	<i>a wood</i>
sunt	<i>are</i>
erant	<i>were</i>
laudent	<i>praise (plural of laudat)</i>
occupant	<i>seize (plural of occupat)</i>
frequentat	<i>frequent</i>
frequentant	<i>frequent (plural of frequentat)</i>
intrat	<i>enters, or is entering</i>
hiemat	<i>winters, or is wintering</i>

Translate into English:

1. Pugnae erant in Africa. 2. Nautae in insula sunt. 3. Statuae erant in insula. 4. Nautae Dianam laudent.¹ 5 Diana nautas laudat. 6. Caesar industriam nautarum laudat. 7. Nautae statuas dearum laudent. 8. Hannibal victoriam advenarum laudat. 9. Nautae silvas occupant. 10. Nautae insulam occupant. 11. Caesar insulas occupat. 12. Nauta silvam intrat. 13. Advenae insulas frequentant. 14. Indigenae in silva hiemant.

¹Ask for several renderings, such as:

(a) The sailors praise Diana.

(b) The seamen extol Diana.

And in sentence 6:

(a) Caesar extols the diligence of the seamen.

(b) The activity of the sailors meets with Caesar's approval.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar takes possession of Rome.² 2. The sailor is entering the woods. 3. The seamen are entering the woods. 4. There are statues of the goddess to be found on the island. 5. There is plenty of spoil to be found on the island. 6. There were rumours of battles. 7. The goddesses approve of the victory³ of the new-comers. 8. The victory of the strangers meets with the approval of the goddess. 9. The inhabitants of the island take possession of the woods. 10. The seamen are entering⁴ the forest. 11. Mariners often come to the island. 12. Caesar is passing the winter in Britain. 13. The activity of the sailors meets with Caesar's commendation.

²What is the action described in this sentence, and what is the object of that action? What, then, is the case of Rome in Latin?

³Why is "victory" not Genitive in this sentence?

⁴In English the Present Indicative of a verb has three forms *e.g.*, "enters," "is entering," and "does enter." In Latin the one form *intrat* stands for all three.

LESSON V.

THE DATIVE CASE.

1. The person to whom anything is given or told is expressed by the Dative.

2. The Dative Singular ends in *ae*, the Dative Plural in *is*.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> silva	silvae
<i>Acc.</i> silvam	silvas
<i>Gen.</i> silvæ	silvarum
<i>Dat.</i> silvæ	silvis

VOCABULARY.

donat *gives***nuntiat** *tells*

Translate into English:

1. Dea advenae¹ victoriam donat.
2. Dea advenis victoriam donat.
3. In Africa erant famae pugnae.
4. Hannibal nautis insulas donat.
5. Nautae incolis statuam deae donant.²
6. Nautae incolis insularum pecuniam donant.
7. Nautae indigenis insulae victoriam nuntiant.
8. Incolae insularum nautis statuam deae donant.
9. Dea indigenis insulae victoriam donat.
10. Agricolae indigenis insulae victoriam advenarum nuntiant.

¹What case and why?²Give several different translations.

Translate into Latin:

1. The goddess grants the victory to the seamen.
2. The goddess vouchsafes the victory to the islanders.³
3. The sailors give the booty to those who dwell on the island.³
4. The mariners present the goddess with a statue.⁴
5. The victory of the foreigners is reported⁵ to the islanders by the farmers.
6. The inhabitants of the island bestow money upon the sailors.
7. The sailors take possession of the woods.
8. The goddess is presented with a statue by those who dwell in the island.
9. The sailor announces the victory to the inhabitants of the island.
10. The islanders express their approval of the victory of the strangers.

³Translate the meaning.⁴The Ablative is not to be used yet.⁵The Passive Voice is not to be used yet.

LESSON VI.

THE ABLATIVE CASE.

1. The Ablative case with the preposition *in* tells the place where a person or thing is: as,

Nauta est in insula. The sailor is in the island.

2. The Ablative with the preposition *cum* tells the person along with whom (in company with whom) one does a thing: as,

Nauta cum agricola ambulat. The sailor is walking with the farmer.

3. The Latin preposition *in* means “into” when it governs the Accusative: as,

Nauta in silvam ambulat. The sailor walks into the forest.

But

Nauta in silva ambulat. The sailor walks in the forest.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> silva	silvae
<i>Gen.</i> silvae	silvarum
<i>Dat.</i> silvae	silvis
<i>Acc.</i> silvam	silvas
<i>Abl.</i> silva	silvis

N.B.—Hereafter the Accusative case will always be given after the Dative.

VOCABULARY.

fugat	<i>puts to flight</i>	Juppiter	<i>Jupiter (the greatest</i>
praecipitat	<i>hurls</i>		<i>of the gods)</i>
aqua	<i>water</i>	et	<i>and</i>
ancora	<i>anchor</i>		

Translate into English:

1. Nauta cum dea in insula ambulat.
2. Dea cum advenis in insula ambulat.
3. Nautae cum dea in insulam ambulant.
4. Advenae statuam deae laudant.
5. Nautae indigenis insulae praedam donant.
6. Statuae deae Minervae in insula sunt.
7. Nautae cum agricolis in silva ambulant.
8. Copia praedae est in silvis.
9. Diana cum nauta in silva ambulat.
10. Advenae incolis insularum praedam donant.
11. Nautae in aquam ancoram praecipitant.
12. Advenae nautas fugant.

Translate into Latin:

1. The sailors are walking in the forest accompanied by the goddess.
2. The sailor is walking in the forest with the inhabitants of the island.
3. The foreigners give the seamen an image of the goddess.
4. Diana is walking in the forest in company with the sailors.
5. Jupiter is walking in the forest and the goddess accompanies him.¹
6. The sailors are walking in the forest accompanied by the inhabitants of the island.
7. The mariners give the plunder to the new-comers.
8. A statue of the goddess is presented to the sailors by the islanders.
9. The sailor throws the anchor overboard.²
10. The sailors throw the plunder overboard.
11. The sailors put the islanders to flight and take possession of the woods.
12. There are battles and rumours of battles in Africa.

¹Translate this sentence by means of a preposition and a noun.

²Translate the idea. See vocabulary above.

LESSON VII.

THE ABLATIVE CASE (*continued*).

1. The Ablative with *e* or *ex* indicates the place from which one comes: as,

Nauta ex silva ambulat. The sailor walks out of the forest.

2. The Ablative with *a* or *ab* indicates the person by whom a thing is done: as,

Dea a nautis laudatur. The goddess is praised by the mariners.

3. The Passive Voice of the 3rd Singular and Plural Present Indicative is formed by adding *ur* to the Active: *laudatur, laudantur; occupatur, occupantur.*

Translate into English:

1. *Dea ex silva ambulat.* 2. *Nautae ex silvis ambulant.* 3. *Nauta a dea laudatur.* 4. *Nautae ab¹ indigenis insulae laudantur.* 5. *Indigenae insulae ex silvis ambulant.* 6. *Incolae insularum deae statuas donant.* 7. *Statua deae ab advenis laudatur.* 8. *Dea in silvis insulae ambulat.* 9. *In Asia erant statuae deae.* 10. *Dea cum nautis in silvam ambulat.* 11. *Victoria advenarum a dea laudatur.* 12. *Nautae silvas intrant et indigenas insulae fugant.*

¹*Ex* and *ab* are used before a vowel or *h*, *e* or *a* before most consonants.

Translate into Latin:

1. The victory of the new-comers is praised by the islanders.
2. The sailor is walking from the forest accompanied by the inhabitants of the island.
3. The image of the goddess is praised by the mariners.

4. The islanders take possession of the woods.² 5. The victory of the strangers³ meets with the approval of the goddess. 6. The island contains plenty of booty.⁴ 7. Jupiter is walking from the woods and the goddess accompanies him. 8. The island is seized by the sailors. 9. The islanders enter the woods and put the seamen to flight. 10. News of the victory is brought to the islanders by the sailors. 11. The inhabitants of the island present the foreigners with money.⁵

²What is the action described in this sentence and what is the object of it.

³Why is "strangers" Genitive in Latin?

⁴Do not translate literally.

⁵To whom is something given? What case then?

N.B. —The teacher should say nothing about the other construction of *donare* at this stage.

LESSON VIII.

Copia, *abundance* (in plural, *supplies* or *troops*).

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>copia</i>	<i>copiae</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>copiae</i>	<i>copiarum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>copiae</i>	<i>copiis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>copiam</i>	<i>copias</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>copia</i>	<i>copiis</i>

VOCABULARY.

portat	<i>carries</i>	celat	<i>conceals</i>
stat	<i>stands</i>	ara	<i>altar</i>
fuga	<i>flight</i>	renovat	<i>renews</i>
propter	<i>on account of</i>	unda	<i>a wave</i>
	(prep. gov. acc.)	ad	<i>to</i> (prep. gov. acc.)
transportat	<i>carries across.</i>	post	<i>behind</i> (prep. gov. acc.)

Translate into English:

1. Nauta praedam in silvas portat. 2. Praeda a nautis in silvam portatur. 3. Incolae insularum praedam ad aram portant. 4. Praeda ab incolis insulae ad aram deae portatur. 5. Nauta post statuam deae stat.¹ 6. Nautae ancoram in undas portant. 7. Nautae in undis ambulant. 8. Ancora a nautis in aquam portatur. 9. Propter fugam incolarum Caesar insulas occupat.

¹Give free translations wherever possible. See English exercise.

Translate into Latin:

1. The seamen carry the plunder into the forest. 2. The plunder is carried out of the woods by the inhabitants of the island. 3. The sailors are carrying the statue of the goddess to the altar. 4. The new-comers enter the woods and renew the battle. 5. The islanders chase the sailors out of the woods. 6. Caesar takes the plunder over to the islands. 7. The inhabitants of the island take up their position behind the altar of the goddess. 8. On account of the victory of the strangers the islanders conceal the plunder in the forest. 9. The islanders conceal the booty behind the altar of the goddess. 10. Because of the victory of the islanders the sailors throw the plunder overboard.

LESSON IX.

1. From the following examples observe how to form the Accusative case of words which do not end in *a*.

<i>Nominative</i>	<i>Accusative</i>
<i>servus, slave</i>	<i>servum</i>
<i>senatus, senate</i>	<i>senatum</i>
<i>res, thing</i>	<i>rem</i>
<i>bellum, war</i>	<i>bellum</i>

VOCABULARY.

trucidat	<i>slaughters</i>	oppidum	<i>town</i>
necat	<i>kills</i>	nuntius	<i>a messenger</i>
regnum	<i>kingdom</i>	portus	<i>a harbour</i>
liberat	<i>liberates</i>	pugnat	<i>fight</i>
parat	<i>prepares</i>	oppugnat	<i>attacks</i>
exercitus	<i>army</i>		

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Nauta incolis insulae rem nuntiat. 2. Senatus ab insulae incolis necatur. 3. Exercitus pugnam renovat. 4. Nautae cum incolis terrae pugnant. 5. Nautae portum intrant. 6. Incolae insulae bellum renovant. 7. Caesar exercitum ad insulam transportat. 8. Incolae insulae oppidum oppugnant. 9. Caesar incolas insulae fugat. 10. Res incolis insulae a nautis nuntiatur. 11. Nautae cum insulae incolis in silvas praedam portant. 12. Caesar bellum parat.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar makes preparations for¹ war. 2. A slave carries the news² to the inhabitants of the island.

¹ *Parat* means "prepares for."

² Announces the thing.

3. The inhabitants of the island prepare for war and carry corn into the woods. 4. Caesar enters the harbour with the sailors. 5. Caesar takes up his position behind the woods. 6. The inhabitants of the island attack the town. 7. The army puts the islanders to flight and takes possession of the spoil. 8. Caesar puts the slave to death on account of his³ treachery. 9. The inhabitants of the island again enter upon hostilities.⁴ 10. Caesar defeats⁵ the inhabitants of the island and puts the senate to the sword.⁶ 11. Dumnorix takes possession of the crown.⁶

³It is not necessary to translate the possessive adjective.

⁴Renew the war.

⁵*Superat.*

⁶Translate the meaning.

LESSON X.

THE IMPERFECT TENSE.

1. The Imperfect tense in Latin has the meaning of the English Past Progressive.

Caesar nautos expectabat. Caesar was waiting for the sailors.

2. Observe how the Imperfect is formed.

Present Tense

laudat

occupat

stat

Imperfect Tense

laudabat

occupabat

stabat

3. The Plural Number is formed as in the Present: *laudabant, occupabant, etc.*

4. The Passive Voice (3rd Person Singular and

Plural) is formed by adding *ur*, as in the Present: *laudabatur*, *laudabantur*, etc.

VOCABULARY.

expectat	<i>awaits</i>	perfidia	<i>treachery</i>
explorat	<i>explores</i>	comparat	<i>procures, collects</i>
locat	<i>places</i>	properat	<i>hastens</i>
copiae	(plural of <i>copia</i>) <i>forces (military)</i>		

Translate into English:

1. Nautae in silvas praedam portabant. 2. Nautae post statuam deae stabant. 3. Juppiter cum dea in insula ambulabat. 4. Indigenae insulae nautis pecuniam donabant. 5. Praeda ex silvis a nautis portabatur. 6. Nuntius incolis insulae rem nuntiabat. 7. Nautae praedam post aram deae locabant. 8. Caesar insulam explorabat. 9. Res ab indigenis insulae explorabatur. 10. Propter perfidiam incolarum Caesar bellum renovabat. .

Translate into Latin:

1. The islanders began to prepare¹ for war. 2. The foreigners were collecting troops. 3. The corn was being carried into the woods by the inhabitants of the island. 4. Caesar investigates the matter. 5. Caesar was entering the harbour with the sailors. 6. A messenger announces the matter to the inhabitants of the island. 7. The islanders place their² forces behind the woods and wait for the army.

¹The Imperfect Tense means "began to prepare," "used to prepare," and "tried to prepare," as well as "were preparing."

²Omit the possessive adjective. It is not necessary to express it in Latin if the possessor can be readily understood from the context.

8. Caesar hastens to the woods with the sailors. 9. Caesar was taking possession of the roads. 10. The corn was being carried out of the woods by the sailors. 11. The islanders were presenting the sailors with money. 12. Caesar was praising the sailors on account of the victory. 13. The senate was being put to the sword by the inhabitants of the island. 14. War was being renewed by the islanders. 15. On account of the victory of the strangers the islanders were carrying the corn into the woods. 16. The inhabitants of the island were being put to death by the sailors. 17. The sailors were being carried over to Britain. 18. The woods were being explored by the sailors. 19. The mariners were concealing the plunder in the forest.

LESSON XI.

THE PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Observe how the Present Subjunctive is formed:

<i>Present Indicative</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive</i>
placat, <i>pacifies</i>	placet
convocat, <i>calls together</i>	convocet

2. The Plural Number and the Passive Voice are formed as before: *laudent, laudetur, laudentur.*

3. In English the idea of purpose is expressed by the Infinitive, by such phrases as "for the purpose of," "with the intention of," etc., *e.g.*,

Caesar put the senate to death to please the people.

Caesar put the senate to death in order to please the people.

Caesar put the senate to death for the purpose of pleasing the people.

Caesar put the senate to death with the intention of pleasing the people.

Caesar put the senate to death that he might please the people.

4. In Latin the idea of purpose is expressed by *ut* (that, in order that), with the verb always in the Subjunctive: as,

Caesar renews the war that he may get possession of the islands. *Caesar bellum renovat ut insulas occupet.*

N. B.—The subject of *occupet* is not expressed. Personal pronouns, when the subject of a verb, are not usually expressed in Latin.

VOCABULARY.

imperator	<i>general</i>
spes	<i>hope</i>
templum	<i>temple</i>
excitat	<i>he arouses, incites</i>

Translate into English:

1. Caesar insulas occupat ut rem exploret.¹
2. Caesar senatum necat ut ab incolis insulae laudetur.
3. Caesar nautas convocat ut exercitum in Britanniam transportet.
4. Nautae silvas intrant ut praedam celent.
5. Imperator bellum renovat, ut senatum placet.
6. Nautae pugnam renovant ut insulam

¹Translate in different ways, thus: "That he may investigate the matter," "To investigate the matter," "With a view to investigating," etc.

occupent. 7. Agricolae silvam intrant ut rem explorent. 8. Nautae incolas insulae ex silvis fugant. 9. Caesar exercitum in Britanniam transportat ut bellum renovet. 10. Indigenae insulae nautas in aquam praecipitabant. 11. Caesar cum nautis in insula hiemabat. 12. Spes praedae nautas excitabat.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar summons the sailors with the intention of transporting his army to the island. 2. The general takes his army over to the island with a view to getting possession of the harbour. 3. To pacify the army Caesar puts the senate to death. 4. The general is putting the senate to death that he may be praised by the inhabitants of the island. 5. The sailor enters the forest to investigate the matter. 6. The army put the sailors to the sword in order to pacify the inhabitants of the island. 7. Caesar renews the war for the purpose of pacifying the army. 8. Caesar summons the islanders for the purpose of investigating the matter. 9. The sailors enter the forest with the intention of taking possession of the town. 10. Caesar spends the winter on the island in order to mollify the inhabitants. 11. The hope of booty was inciting the sailors to¹ war. 12. The plunder was being concealed by the sailors behind the altar of the goddess.

¹*Ad* with the Acc.

LESSON XII.

THE IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. Observe how the Imperfect Subjunctive is formed:

<i>Imperfect Indicative</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>
intrabat, <i>was entering</i>	intraret
laudabat, <i>was praising</i>	laudaret

2. The Plural Number and the Passive Voice are formed as in the Present Tense: *laudarent, laudaretur, laudarentur*, etc.

3. The rule for the tense in a clause of purpose is as follows: When the principal verb is Present, put the Present Subjunctive after *ut*; and when the principal verb is Imperfect, put the Imperfect Subjunctive after *ut*.

Translate into English:

1. Caesar nautas convocabat ut exercitum in Britanniam transportaret. 2. Imperator exercitum in insulas transportabat ut portum occuparet. 3. Caesar senatum necabat ut exercitum placaret. 4. Imperator senatum necabat ut ab incolis insulae laudaretur. 5. Nautae in silvas ambulabant ut rem explorarent. 6. Exercitus nautas necabat ut incolas insulae placaret. 7. Caesar bellum renovabat ut exercitum placaret. 8. Caesar in Britanniam exercitum transportabat ut bellum renovaret. 9. Praeda ex silvis in oppidum ab incolis insulae portabatur. 10. Propter nautarum victoriam incolae insulae ex silvis in oppidum praedam portabant.

Translate into Latin:

1. The general was taking possession of the islands for the purpose of investigating the matter. 2. Dumnorix was making preparations for war with a view to seizing the crown. 3. To pacify the islanders the sailors were throwing the plunder overboard. 4. The seamen carry water from the woods into the town. 5. The senate is put to death by those who dwell on the island. 6. The mariners were entering the forest to investigate the matter. 7. Caesar enters the harbour with his forces and puts the islanders to flight. 8. Because of the flight of the sailors Caesar does not take his army over to the island. 9. On account of the scarcity¹ of water Caesar does not spend² the winter on the island. 10. Dumnorix incites the islanders to war with the intention of getting possession of the throne. 11. As water was scarce Caesar evacuated the island³ and carried his troops over to Gaul.

¹*inopia*.

²"spends," "is spending" and "does spend" are all expressed by the Present Indicative in Latin.

³How much of this may be omitted if the context has made it clear that Caesar is on the island? Detached sentences have little meaning.

N.B.—To the teacher.—Give your pupils the context when necessary. For example, in dealing with 2 state a few facts about Dumnorix; in 3 manufacture an intelligible context.

LESSON XIII.

1. <i>Present Indicative</i>	<i>Perfect Indicative</i>
locat, <i>he places</i>	locavit, <i>he placed</i>
perturbat, <i>he confuses</i>	perturbavit, <i>he confused</i>
aedificat, <i>he builds</i>	aedificavit, <i>he built</i>

2. If the principal verb is in the Present Tense, *ut* will take the Present Subjunctive; if the principal verb is in the Imperfect or Perfect Tense, *ut* will take the Imperfect.

VOCABULARY.

Gallia	<i>Gaul</i>	superat	<i>he conquers</i>
legatus	<i>ambassador, lieutenant-general</i>	properat	<i>he hastens</i>
mora	<i>delay</i>	sine	<i>without (gov. abl.)</i>
captivus	<i>a captive</i>	apud	<i>at, near (gov. acc.)</i>
		adversus	<i>against (gov. acc.)</i>

Translate into English:

1. Caesar insulas sine mora occupavit. 2. Caesar in Britanniam exercitum transportavit. 3. Nauta praedam ex silvis portavit. 4. Legatus incolis insulae rem nuntiavit. 5. Caesar bellum paravit ut senatum placaret. 6. Caesar incolas Britanniae superavit. 7. Caesar bellum renovavit ut vias occuparet. 8. Propter nautarum moram Caesar in insulas exercitum non transportavit. 9. Caesar in Germaniam exercitum transportavit ut incolas superaret. 10. Hannibal adversus Publium properavit. 11. Hannibal Publium superavit primo¹ apud Rhodanum, iterum apud Padum, tertio apud Trebiam.

¹*primo*, first; *iterum*, again; *tertio*, a third time.

Translate into Latin:

1. To please the army Caesar renewed the war against the islanders. 2. The commander took possession of the roads without delay. 3. The sailor carried the plunder from the road into the woods. 4. Dumnorix again entered upon hostilities¹ with a view to seizing the crown. 5. Caesar routed the inhabitants of the island in order to get possession of the corn. 6. Caesar summons the sailors for the purpose of transporting his army to Britain. 7. Caesar hastened from Italy with the intention of renewing the war against the inhabitants of Gaul. 8. To please the ambassador, Labienus set the prisoner free. 9. Caesar enters the harbour with the intention of renewing the war against the inhabitants of the island. 10. The islanders seize the roads and conceal the corn in the woods. 11. Caesar immediately built a wall in the rear of² the woods.

¹Compare with sentence 1.

²Translate "in the rear of" by a preposition.

LESSON XIV.

1. *Cum* (when, since, although) is generally followed by the Subjunctive Mood if the tense is Imperfect. In English the meaning is given by the Indicative Mood: as,

Cum Caesar portum intraret, nautae praedam in aquam praecipitaverunt. When Caesar was entering the harbour, the sailors threw the plunder overboard.

VOCABULARY.

Imperfect Indicative.

erat	<i>was</i>
aberat	<i>was absent</i>
aderat	<i>was present</i>
ventitabat	<i>was coming often</i>
consultabat	<i>was deliberating</i>
expugnabat	<i>was storming</i>

Imperfect Subjunctive.

esset
abesset
adesset
ventitaret
consultaret
expugnaret

murus	<i>wall</i>	perfidia	<i>treachery</i>
frumentum	<i>corn</i>	oppidanus	<i>an inhabitant of a town</i>
portus	<i>harbour</i>	servus	<i>slave</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar cum in Britannia esset murum aedificavit.
2. Caesar cum in insula esset incolis frumentum donavit.
3. Cum indigenae insulae bellum renovarent Caesar senatum necavit.
4. Cum Caesar abesset indigenae insulae bellum parabant.
5. Cum incolae bellum pararent Caesar sine mora insulas occupavit.
6. Cum advenae in silvis copias celarent, Caesar sine mora vias occupavit.
7. Cum Caesar in Gallia abesset, incolae Britanniae bellum parabant.
8. Cum indigenae insulae consultarent, Caesar cum copiis portum intravit.
9. Propter perfidiam oppidanorum¹ Caesar oppidum expugnavit.
10. Cum Caesar abesset, nautae ad insulas ventitabant.

¹Gen. Pl. of *oppidanus*.

Translate into Latin:

1. In Caesar's absence the sailors entered the harbour for the purpose of exploring the islands.
2. When Caesar was absent in Italy, the inhabitants of Gaul began to make preparations for war.
3. When

the inhabitants of the island were inside the woods, Caesar took possession of the roads. 4. When Labienus was preparing for war he sent to the islands for sailors.² 5. In Caesar's absence the army stormed the town and put the inhabitants to the sword. 6. When Caesar was entering the harbour a slave brought the news³ to the inhabitants of the island. 7. The islanders immediately collect their forces, hasten to the harbour, and⁴ put the army to flight. 8. Caesar puts the islanders to flight and takes possession of the roads. 9. Sailors often used to come to the islands to conceal their⁵ plunder in the woods. 10. Caesar put the sailors to death that he might be praised by the inhabitants of the island. 11. Since the islanders were making preparations for war, Caesar took possession of the harbour. 12. When Caesar was taking possession of the harbour, Labienus took the town by storm.

²He summoned sailors from the islands.

³Reported the matter.

⁴Omit *et* before the last of a series, unless the other members of the series have also been joined by *et*.

⁵Omit.

LESSON XV.

First Declension.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> fossa, <i>ditch</i>	fossae
<i>Gen.</i> fossae	fossarum
<i>Dat.</i> fossae	fossis
<i>Acc.</i> fossam	fossas
<i>Abl.</i> fossa	fossis

Second Declension.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> vicus, <i>village</i>	vici
<i>Gen.</i> vici	vicorum
<i>Dat.</i> vico	vicis
<i>Acc.</i> vicum	vicos
<i>Abl.</i> vico	vicis

N. B.—When a noun ends in *um* in the Nominative Singular, the Nominative and Accusative Plural end in *a*: thus,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> consilium, <i>plan</i>	consilia
<i>Gen.</i> consilii	consiliorum
<i>Dat.</i> consilio	consiliis
<i>Acc.</i> consilium	consilia
<i>Abl.</i> consilio	consiliis

VOCABULARY.

properat	<i>hastens</i>	ager	<i>field</i>
Germanus	<i>a German</i>	adventus	<i>arrival</i>
jam	<i>already</i>	Gallus	<i>a Gaul</i>
cremat	<i>burns</i>	Britannus	<i>a Briton</i>
Romanus	<i>a Roman</i>	de	<i>concerning, about</i>
Rhenus	<i>the Rhine</i>		<i>(prep. gov. abl.)</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Incolae insulae adventum Romanorum expectabant. 2. Propter inopiam frumenti Caesar insulas occupavit. 3. Romani frumentum in vicos portabant. 4. Caesar legato consilium nuntiavit. 5. Murus ab legato aedificabatur. 6. Indigenae insulae Romanis frumentum donabant. 7. Res legato ab servis nuntiatur. 8. Propter victoriam Romanorum Germani frumentum ex agris in oppidum portabant. 9. Caesar trans Rhenum properavit ut Germanos superaret. 10. Cum Germani de bello consultarent Caesar ad Rhenum properavit.

Translate into Latin:

1. The Romans were awaiting the arrival of the Germans. 2. The plan is announced to the Germans by slaves. 3. The matter is announced to the Romans by a slave. 4. Since the Gauls were making preparations for war Caesar burnt their villages. 5. On account of the scarcity of corn Caesar did not spend the winter on the island. 6. Since there was a scarcity of corn in Britain, Caesar passed the winter in Gaul. 7. When the Romans were holding consultations about war, Saguntum was already being attacked. 8. Since the Gauls were again entering upon hostilities, Caesar hastened from Italy with his forces. 9. Hope of plunder inflamed¹ the minds of the Gauls. 10. Dumnorix was inciting¹ the Gauls to² war with the intention of seizing the crown.

¹*excitat*, inflames.

²*ad*.

LESSON XVI.

1. Learn the 3rd Person Plural of the Perfect Indicative from the following:

importaverunt, *they imported*
 demigraverunt, *they moved*
 remigraverunt, *they moved back*

2. *Castra* (a camp), *arma* (arms), and *impedimenta* (baggage) are used in the Plural only.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>castra</i>	<i>impedimenta</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>castrorum</i>	<i>impedimentorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>castris</i>	<i>impedimentis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>castra</i>	<i>impedimenta</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>castris</i>	<i>impedimentis</i>

VOCABULARY.

vicus	<i>village</i>	auxilium	<i>aid</i>
vinum	<i>wine</i>	importat	<i>imports</i>
equus	<i>horse</i>	legatus	<i>lieutenant-general</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Cum Caesar in Britannia abesset, Galli bellum renovaverunt. 2. Germani cum impedimentis trans Rhenum in vicos remigraverunt. 3. Caesar legato consilia nuntiavit. 4. Cum Caesar abesset, indigenae insulae exercitum Romanorum perturbaverunt. 5. Cum indigenae insulae bellum pararent, Caesar vicos cremavit. 6. Indigenae insulae vinum non importaverunt. 7. Cum Caesar bellum pararet, indigenae insulae equos importaverunt. 8. Cum Galli auxilium ex Britannia expectarent, Romani portum occupaverunt. 9. Galli in oppido arma celaverunt. 10. Cum Caesar abesset Galli castra

Romanorum occupaverunt. 11. Romani in Britannia hiemaverunt, ut frumentum compararent.

Translate into Latin:

1. The Britons awaited the arrival of the Romans. 2. The Romans threw the Britons into confusion and burnt their villages. 3. When the lieutenant-generals were away the villagers took possession of the roads. 4. The Britons carried the corn from the villages into the woods. 5. The Germans moved across the Rhine with a view to getting possession of the villages of the Gauls. 6. The Romans burnt the villages in order to throw the inhabitants into confusion. 7. When Caesar was absent in Britain, the Germans imported horses from Gaul. 8. The matter was being investigated by the villagers. 9. The villagers gave the lieutenant-generals a supply of corn. 10. Caesar hastened from Italy to attack the camp of the Germans. 11. On account of the delay of the sailors Caesar took his army over to Britain without baggage.

LESSON XVII.

1. Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *er* usually drop *e* before adding the terminations for the different cases:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ager, a field	agri
<i>Gen.</i> agri.	agrorum
<i>Dat.</i> agro	agris
<i>Acc.</i> agrum	agros
<i>Abl.</i> agro	agris

2. The means or instrument with which a thing is done is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition: as,

Caesar vallo locum firmavit. Caesar strengthened his position with a rampart.

VOCABULARY.

confirmat	<i>he establishes</i>	amicitia	<i>friendship</i>
firmat	<i>he strengthens</i>	faber	<i>workman</i>
evolat	<i>he rushes out</i>	locus	<i>place</i>
vastat	<i>he lays waste</i>	vallum	<i>rampart</i>
ne,	<i>lest, in order that not</i>	populus	<i>people</i>

3. When a clause of purpose is negative, put *ne* for *ut non*: as,

Caesar senatum trucidavit ne indigenae insulae bellum renorarent. Caesar put the senate to the sword in order that the islanders might not renew hostilities.

REVIEW OF VERB.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Indicative Mood</i>		<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	
	3rd Singular	3rd Plural	3rd Singular	3rd Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	vastat	vastant	vastet	vastent
<i>Imperf.</i>	vastabat	vastabant	vastaret	vastarent
<i>Perf.</i>	vastavit	vastaverunt		

N. B.—The Perfect Subjunctive will be given later.

When past time is required in the Subjunctive Mood, use the Imperfect.

PASSIVE VOICE.

	<i>Indicative Mood</i>		<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	
	3rd Singular	3rd Plural	3rd Singular	3rd Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	vastatur	vastantur	vastetur	vastentur
<i>Imperf.</i>	vastabatur	vastabantur	vastaretur	vastarentur

N. B.—The Perfect Tense of the Passive Voice will be given later. It is not formed by adding *ur* to the Active.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar senatum necavit ne bellum renovaretur.
2. Caesar senatum necat ne incolae insulae bellum renovent.
3. Cum Romani in silvis essent, Britanni vicos occupaverunt.
4. Caesar fabros convocavit ut murum circum oppidum aedificarent.
5. Legatus in insulis hiemavit, ne¹ incolae bellum renovarent.
6. Caesar exercitum in Britanniam transportavit, ne incolae agros vastarent.
7. Germani ad bellum Gallos excitant, ne Romani agros trans Rhenum vastent.
8. Caesar vicos Gallorum occupavit, ne incolae frumentum exportarent.
9. Caesar agros Gallorum vastavit ut exercitum placaret.
10. Britanni ex silvis evolaverunt ne Romani agros occuparent.
11. Caesar amicitiam cum Gallis confirmavit ne agros provinciae vastarent.
12. Agri Gallorum ab legato vastabantur ne bellum renovaretur.
13. Caesar castra vallo fossaque firmavit.
14. Cum Saguntinis bellum nondum² erat, sed jam belli causa.

¹*ne* with the Subjunctive often gives the idea of preventing somebody from doing something.

²*nondum*, not yet. *sed*, but. *jam*, already.

Translate into Latin:

1. When Caesar was making preparations for war, he sent for engineers from Italy.³
2. Caesar sent to Spain for sailors in order to take his army over to Britain.
3. The slaves reported the matter to the lieutenant that they might not be put to death by the people.
4. Caesar put the slaves to death to

³Say "he summoned engineers from Italy."

prevent⁵ them from announcing his intention⁴ to the inhabitants of the villages. 5. Caesar destroyed the fields lest the Britons should take possession of the villages. 6. Since the Britons kept coming into the fields with the plunder, Caesar took possession of the roads. 7. The general put the slaves to death to prevent⁵ the matter from being investigated. 8. When Caesar was absent in Italy, the Gauls again entered upon hostilities. 9. The engineers strengthened the camp with⁶ a rampart and a ditch. 10. Lest the Romans should renew the war, the Gauls established friendly relations⁷ with⁸ the Germans.

⁴*consilium*.

⁵*ne*.

⁶Is "with" to be expressed?

⁷Say "established friendship."

⁸*cum*.

LESSON XVIII.

1. After *orat* (begs), *rogat* (asks), *invitat* (invites), and *imperat* (orders), put *ut* (*ne*, if negative) with the Subjunctive instead of the English Infinitive: as,

The senate begs the lieutenant-general to seize the town. *Senatus legatum orat ut oppidum occupet*.

(Literally) The senate begs the lieutenant that he may seize the town.

2. The verb *imperat* governs the Dative Case of the person ordered: as,

The senate ordered the lieutenant-general not to seize the town. *Senatus legato imperavit ne oppidum occuparet*.

VOCABULARY.

conservat *saves* **circum** *around* (prep. gov. acc.)
cis *on this side of* (prep. gov. acc.)

Translate into English:¹

1. Indigenae insulae legatum oraverunt ne bellum renovaret. 2. Galli Germanos invitaverunt ut trans Rhenum demigrarent. 3. Caesar incolis insulae imperavit ut servos liberarent. 4. Caesar legato imperavit ut insulam exploraret. 5. Indigenae insulae orabant ut oppidum conservaretur. 6. Caesar legatis imperat ut nautas sine mora convocent. 7. Senatus legatum oravit ne bellum renovaret. 8. Britanni Romanos orant ne agros vastent. 9. Caesar Germanis imperavit ut trans Rhenum remigrarent. 10. Labienus fabris imperavit ut murum circum oppidum aedificarent. 11. Caesar nautis imperavit ut portum intrarent. 12. Legatus nautis imperat ut praedam in aquam praecipitent.

¹After translating each sentence literally, give as free and varied a rendering as you can.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar ordered the Germans to go back to their villages across the Rhine. 2. The senate ordered the lieutenant-general not to destroy the lands of the Gauls. 3. The Gauls beg Labienus not to take the army over to Britain. 4. The Gauls beg the Germans to await the arrival of the Romans on this side of the Rhine. 5. Caesar orders the lieutenant-general to summon the engineers. 6. Caesar ordered Labienus to take possession of the harbour.

7. When Caesar was absent in Britain the Gauls begged Labienus not to attack the towns. 8. The Gauls invited the Germans to move across the Rhine into Gaul. 9. Caesar ordered Labienus to take the army over without baggage. 10. The lieutenant-general asked the villagers to procure a supply of corn. 11. Owing to the fact that the islanders were getting ready for war, Caesar took possession of the harbour. 12. Since there was plenty of booty to be found on the island, the sailors entered the harbour.²

²Several words in this sentence may be omitted without injuring the sense.

LESSON XIX.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD, ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Observe the following Infinitives:

occupare, *to seize*

demigrare, *to move, emigrate*

remigrare, *to move back*

appropinquare, *to approach* (governs Dative)

VOCABULARY.

jubet	<i>he orders</i>	poterat	<i>he was able</i>
jussit	<i>he ordered</i>	causa	<i>cause</i>
liberat	<i>frees</i>	equitatus	<i>cavalry</i>
potest	<i>he is able</i>		

N. B.—*Jubet* (orders) has the same meaning as *imperat*, but it governs the Accusative and takes the Infinitive after it just as in English: thus,
Caesar legatum insulas occupare jubet. Caesar orders the lieutenant to seize the islands.

If we use *imperat* in this sentence, we must write as before:

Caesar legato imperat ut insulas occupet.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar exercitum vias occupare jubet. 2. Caesar Germanos trans Rhenum remigrare jubet.¹ 3. Nauta Britanniae appropinquare non poterat. 4. Caesar Britannos superare non poterat. 5. Legatus exercitum in Britanniam transportare non poterat. 6. Propter inopiam frumenti Caesar bellum renovare non poterat. 7. Cum Caesar Britanniae appropinquaret, incolae agros vastabant. 8. Caesar Germanos trans Rhenum remigrare jussit ne agros Gallorum vastarent. 9. Labienus equitatum locum sine mora occupare jubet. 10. Labienus servis imperavit ut praedam ex silvis in oppidum portarent.

¹Substitute *imperat* for *jubet* and rewrite the Latin.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar was not able to establish friendly relations with the Germans. 2. The general ordered the army to seize the villages. 3. The senate commanded the army to devastate the lands of the Gauls. 4. When Caesar came near the islands the inhabitants burnt their villages. 5. Caesar orders his chief officers to set the slaves at liberty. 6. The Germans were not able to move back to their villages across the Rhine. 7. Caesar orders his officers to prepare for war immediately. 8. Since the Gauls were again entering upon hostilities without good

reason,² Caesar orders the army to destroy their lands. 9. Caesar passed the winter in Britain for the purpose of exploring the island. 10. Owing to³ the scarcity of supplies Caesar was unable to convey his army over to Britain.

²Not necessary to express "good."

³A preposition will translate "owing to."

LESSON XX.

THE INFINITIVE MOOD, PASSIVE VOICE.

1. Learn the following Passive Infinitives:

occupari, to be seized

aedificari, to be built

comportari, to be carried together, to be collected

firmari, to be strengthened

expugnari, to be taken by assault

VOCABULARY.

praesidium	<i>garrison</i>	numerus	<i>number</i>
dominus	<i>master</i>	atque	<i>and</i>

Translate into English:

1. Caesar locum praesidio firmari jubet. 2. Imperator incolas insulae necari jubet. 3. Caesar fabros convocavit ut muros firmarent. 4. Muri a fabris firmari non poterant. 5. Legatus frumentum ex agris in oppidum comportari jubet. 6. Dominus servos sine mora liberari jubet. 7. Propter numerum incolarum Caesar locum expugnare non poterat. 8. Caesar oppidum expugnari jubet. 9. Ne locus expugnaretur Caesar muros aedificari

jubet.¹ 10. Cum Caesar abesset, Labienus locum expugnare non poterat. 11. Caesar castra vallo atque fossa firmari jubet.

¹*jubet* is Present Tense, but in meaning it is past, therefore the Subjunctive *expugnaretur* is in the Imperfect Tense. This is called the "Historic Present."

It is also correct to put the Present Subjunctive in the subordinate clause when the principal verb is Historic Present.

Translate into Latin:

1. Labienus orders the baggage to be carried over to the island. 2. Caesar orders Volusenus to explore the island. 3. Caesar ordered² the sailors to be summoned that he might take his army over to Britain. 4. When Caesar was absent, Labienus ordered the captives to be liberated. 5. Because of the absence of the engineers the walls could not be built. 6. To prevent a renewal of the war Caesar orders the senate to be put to the sword. 7. Lest the war might be renewed, the general ordered the camp to be strengthened with a rampart and a trench. 8. When Caesar was approaching Britain the inhabitants strengthened their villages with walls and trenches. 9. Labienus orders the corn to be carried from the fields into the villages. 10. The Britons beg the Romans not to destroy their lands.

²Use the Historic Present.

LESSON XXI.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. The Infinitive Active of the First Conjugation ends in *are*.

2. The Infinitive Active of the Second Conjugation ends in *ere* (the *e* before *re* being a long vowel).

3. The following are Second Conjugation verbs in the Infinitive Active:

jubere, *to order*

habere, *to have*

tenere, *to hold*

monere, *to advise, warn*

4. Learn the Present and Imperfect Indicative of these verbs.

Present Indicative		Imperfect Indicative	
3rd Sing.	3rd Plural	3rd Sing.	3rd Plural
jubet	jubent	jubebat	jubebant
habet	habent	habebat	habebant
tenet	tenent	tenebat	tenebant
monet	monent	monebat	monebant

5. The Passive Voice is formed as in the First Conjugation.

6. Verbs signifying to ask, to warn, to advise and to command (except *jubere* and *vetare*) are followed by *ut* (or *ne*) with the Subjunctive instead of the Infinitive as in English: as,

Caesar Labienum monebat ne agros vastaret. Caesar was warning Labienus not to destroy the fields.

VOCABULARY.

sustinere	<i>to sustain</i>	avus	<i>grandfather</i>
persuadere	<i>to persuade</i>	impetus	<i>attack</i>
movere	<i>to move</i>	ripa	<i>bank of a river</i>
vetare	<i>to forbid</i>	peditatus	<i>infantry</i>
manere	<i>to remain</i>	collega	<i>colleague</i>
obtinere	<i>to hold</i>	explorator	<i>a scout</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Cum Romani insulae appropinquarent, incolae frumentum in silvas portari jubent. 2. Caesar Labienum monet ut portum occupet.¹ 3. Caesar Labienum monebat ut portum occuparet.¹ 4. Germani vicos et agros trans Rhenum habent. 5. Labienus portum tenebat, ne a Gallis occuparetur. 6. Romani agros tenebant ne Galli frumentum in oppida portarent. 7. Cum Caesar in Britannia abesset, Labienus portum tenebat. 8. Imperator portum tenebat, ne indigenae insulae bellum renovarent. 9. Indigenae insulae impetum nautarum sustinere non poterant. 10. Explorator Labieno persuadet² ut portum occupet. 11. Caesar castra ad ripam Rheni movet.³ 12. Labienus peditatum in castris manere jubet. 13. Caesar Labienum castra movere vetat. 14. Consul collegam monebat ut nuntium expectaret.

¹First translate literally, and then idiomatically.

²*persuadere* governs the Dative of the person.

³*movere* means "to move"; so does *demigrare*. What is the difference?

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar was keeping the army within the camp.
2. The Germans had lands and villages across the Rhine. 3. When Caesar was approaching the Rhine,

the Germans took possession of the banks. 4. The Germans were holding the position lest Caesar should take possession of the banks. 5. The lieutenant persuades the slave to carry the news⁴ to the inhabitants of the island. 6. The grandfather of Aquitanus used to hold⁵ the sovereign power in Gaul. 7. Labienus was holding the harbor for fear that⁶ the Gauls would renew the war. 8. Caesar orders the Germans to move back to the villages across the Rhine. 9. Labienus orders the army to be taken over without the baggage. 10. Caesar warns Labienus not to burn the villages of the Gauls. 11. The consul persuades the people to build the walls of the town. 12. When the Romans were approaching the Rhine, the Germans strengthened their camp with a rampart and a trench. 13. Caesar warns his chief officers to keep the army in camp.

⁴*res* may denote anything which can be supplied from the context.

⁵Give a number of the English equivalents for the Imperfect Tense.

⁶One word will translate "for fear that."

LESSON XXII.

SECOND CONJUGATION (*continued*).

1. Learn the Present and Imperfect Subjunctive of the following verbs of the Second Conjugation:

Present Subjunctive		Imperfect Subjunctive	
<i>3rd Sing.</i>	<i>3rd Plural</i>	<i>3rd Sing.</i>	<i>3rd Plural</i>
jubeat	jubeant	juberet	juberent
habeat	habeant	haberet	haberent
teneat	teneant	teneret	tenerent
moneat	moneant	moneret	monerent

VOCABULARY.

obtinere	<i>to hold</i>	hiberna	<i>winter-quarters</i>
videre	<i>to see</i>		(plural 2nd decl.
retinere	<i>to detain</i>		like castra)
movere	<i>to move (transi-</i>	vis	<i>violence</i>
	<i>tive)</i>	ventus	<i>wind</i>
promovere	<i>to move forward</i>	cursus	<i>course</i>
		fortiter	<i>bravely</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Senatus legato imperat ut portum teneat.¹
2. Senatus legato imperavit ut portum teneret.¹
3. Cum Britanni portum tenerent, Labienus frumentum transportare non poterat.
4. Galli legatum rogant ne captivos retineat.
5. Galli legatum rogaverunt ne captivos retineret.
6. Caesar cum Gallos perturbari videret locum expugnari jubet.
7. Caesar exercitum monet ut fortiter impetum Gallorum sustineat.
8. Caesar equitatum monebat ut

¹Translate literally as well as idiomatically.

fortiter impetum Gallorum sustineret. 9. Caesar Labieno imperavit ut exercitum ad insulam sine impedimentis transportaret. 10. Dominus servos necavit ne res a populo exploraretur. 11. Consul collegam monet ne in insula maneat. 12. Caesar castra moveri jubet. 13. Propter inopiam frumenti Labienus locum tenere non poterat. 14. Caesar locum ab Labieno teneri jubet. 15. Nautae cursum tenere non poterant. 16. Cum Caesar in Italia abesset, Labienus exercitum in hibernis tenebat.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar was detaining the captives for fear that his plans might be announced to the Gauls. 2. When Caesar saw the Gauls in the woods he ordered² the roads to be seized. 3. Caesar was advising Labienus to burn the villages. 4. Caesar advises Labienus to keep the army in winter-quarters. 5. The Gauls besought Labienus not to move the camp forward. 6. Owing to the violence of the wind the sailors were unable to hold their course. 7. The Gauls beg the Romans not to remain in winter-quarters. 8. When Caesar was absent in Britain he ordered² Labienus to remain in Gaul for the purpose of holding the harbour. 9. Labienus orders² the army to remain in camp with the baggage. 10. The consul was begging his colleague not to remain in winter-quarters. 11. Caesar put the senate to death to prevent hostilities from being renewed.

²Use *jubere* in the Historic Present.

LESSON XXIII.

SECOND CONJUGATION (*continued*).

1. Learn the following Perfect Tenses:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
monuit	monuerunt
habuit	habuerunt
tenuit	tenuerunt
sustinuit	sustinuerunt
retinuit	retinuerunt
jussit	jusserunt
mansit	manserunt
timuit	timuerunt

2. Duration of time is expressed by the Accusative Case without a preposition: as,

Exercitus sex horas pugnavit. The army fought for six hours.

VOCABULARY.

accusare	<i>to upbraid</i>	ibi	<i>there, in that place</i>
aceriter	<i>spiritedly</i>	eo	<i>thither, there, to that place</i>
domi	<i>at home</i>	hic	<i>here</i>
domum	<i>(to) home</i>	sex	<i>six</i>
domo	<i>from home</i>	decem	<i>ten</i>
manere	<i>to remain</i>	quod	<i>because</i>
timere	<i>to fear</i>	telum	<i>weapon</i>
hora	<i>hour</i>	annus	<i>year</i>
		adventus	<i>arrival</i>

REVIEW OF SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>	
	3rd Singular	3rd Plural	3rd Singular	3rd Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	jubet	jubent	jubeat	jubeant
<i>Imperf.</i>	jubebat	jubebant	juberet	juberent
<i>Perf.</i>	jussit	jusserunt		

N. B.—Form the Passive Voice as in the First Conjugation.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Quod Britanni portum tenebant, Caesar castra promoveri jussit. 2. Caesar Menapios in suos¹ vicos trans Rhenum remigrare jussit et ibi manere. 3. Caesar cum Gallis sex annos pugnavit. 4. Legatus exercitum in castris sex horas tenuit. 5. Galli decem horas fortiter pugnaverunt. 6. Quod Germani domi manserunt, Galli Romanos superare non poterant. 7. Galli Labienum timuerunt quod exercitum in hibernis non tenuit. 8. Caesar captivos retineri jussit ne Galli bellum renovarent. 9. Equitatus impetum Gallorum decem horas sustinuit. 10. Cum Caesar abesset, Labienus locum sex horas tenuit. 11. Quod finitimos timebant, domi manserunt.

¹their.

Translate into Latin:

1. In that place the Gauls awaited the arrival of the Romans for six hours. 2. The Romans bravely sustained the attack of the Gauls for ten hours. 3. Because of the scarcity of corn the Romans were not able to stay in the island. 4. Because the Gauls held the roads Caesar was not able to approach the villages. 5. On account of the arrival of the Romans the Germans returned home across the Rhine. 6. The lieutenant ordered the corn to be conveyed from the fields into the town. 7. When Caesar was approaching the island the Britons quickly strengthened their villages with walls and trenches. 8. The Germans fought a fierce battle with the Romans for six hours. 9. Caesar ordered the prisoners to re-

main there. 10. Caesar blamed the islanders because they were devastating the country without just² cause. 11. The consul advised his colleague to break up the camp without delay. 12. Because their supply of ammunition ran short,³ the Gauls were unable to hold the position.

²Is it necessary to express this adjective?

³Express as simply as possible. What kind of ammunition did the ancient Gauls possess?

LESSON XXIV.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

1. The Present Infinitive of the Third Conjugation ends, like that of the Second Conjugation, in *ere*, but the *e* before *re* is short in the Third Conjugation and long in the Second: thus,

ducere, to lead
mittere, to send
procedere, to go forward
discedere, to go away
pellere, to drive
expellere, to drive out
contendere, to hasten

2. The Passive Infinitive of the Third Conjugation ends in *i*, and the *er* of the Active Infinitive is dropped: thus,

duci, to be led
mitti, to be sent

3. The Third Singular Present Indicative ends in *it*, and the Third Plural in *unt*: thus,

ducit, ducunt; mittit, mittunt, etc.

4. The Passive of the Present Indicative is made by adding *ur* as in the First and Second Conjugations: thus,

ducitur, mittuntur, etc.

VOCABULARY.

defendere	<i>to defend</i>	injuria	<i>injury</i>
reducere	<i>to lead back</i>	a or ab	<i>from</i> (prep. gov. abl.)
remittere	<i>to send back</i>		[For another meaning, see p. 16]
mare	<i>the sea</i>	provincia	<i>province</i>
vis	<i>violence, force, might</i>	telum	<i>weapon</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Germani celeriter domum contendunt. 2. Caesar equitatum celeriter ex castris mittit. 3. Senatus ad Labienum nuntium mittit. 4. Caesar exercitum trans Rhenum ducit. 5. Germani in agros Gallorum sine mora procedunt et ibi adventum Romanorum exspectant. 6. Exercitus in silvas ab legato mittitur. 7. Usipites domo a Suebis expelluntur. 8. Equitatus trans Rhenum ab Labieno mittitur. 9. Cum Provincia a Pirustis vastaretur Caesar eo exercitum ducit. 10. Caesar castra vallo fossaque defendi jussit. 11. Propter telorum inopiam castra defendi non poterant.¹ 12. Exercitus ad mare reduci non poterat. 13. Suebi ab Labieno ex Gallia expelli non poterant. 14. Caesar equitatum trans Rhenum mitti jubet. 15. Caesar nun-

¹Why Plural? Give as free a translation of this sentence as you can. See the last English sentence of the previous exercise.

tium ad Labienum remitti jussit. 16. Caesar locum praesidiis firmari jussit. 17. Caesar Britannos ex castris discedere jubet. 18. Caesar copiam frumenti ab legatis comparari jussit.

Translate into Latin:

1. For ten years the Tencteri withstood the might of the Suebi. 2. The Suebi drive the Tencteri out of Germany into Gaul. 3. The Germans send ambassadors to Labienus to sue for pardon.² 4. When Caesar was absent in Britain, Dumnorix persuades the Gauls to renew hostilities. 5. Caesar quickly leads the infantry out of the fields into the woods. 6. The Romans quickly drive the Germans across the Rhine. 7. The army advances into the woods without their baggage. 8. Caesar dispatches a letter to the senate. 9. The Gauls begged Labienus not to move his camp forward. 10. Owing to the treachery of the Gauls, Caesar ordered the ambassadors to take their departure from the camp at once. 11. Because Labienus was not able to hold out³ against the Gauls, Caesar hastened from Italy to the army. 12. The Britons beg Caesar to defend Mandubratius from injury at the hands⁴ of Cassivellaunus. 13. To⁵ prevent the Germans from again entering upon hostilities, Caesar ordered the army to be led across the Rhine.

²*venia*.

³For vocabulary compare with the first sentence.

⁴Is "at the hands" necessary to the meaning?

⁵*ne*.

LESSON XXV.

THIRD CONJUGATION (*continued*).

1. The Imperfect Indicative is formed as in the Second Conjugation: thus, *ducebat, mittebant, pellebatur*, etc.

2. The 3rd Person Singular of the Present Subjunctive ends in *at*. The Plural and the Passive are formed as in the Second Conjugation: thus, *ducat, mittant, pellantur*, etc.

3. The 3rd Singular Imperfect Subjunctive is always formed by adding *t* to the Present Infinitive: thus, *duceret, mitteret*, etc. The Plural Number and Passive Voice are formed as before: thus, *ducerent, ducerentur*, etc.

VOCABULARY.

cogere	<i>to compel</i>	opprimere	<i>to surprise, overwhelm</i>
gerere	<i>to transact, carry on (war)</i>	consistere	<i>to halt, stand</i>
relinquere	<i>to leave</i>		

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar exercitum ex silvis ducebat. 2. Exercitus ad vicum procedebat. 3. Legatus ab Italia in Galliam contendebat. 4. Germani cum Gallis bellum gerebant. 5. Caesar Gallos in silvas pellebat ut vicos occuparet. 6. Legatus captivos in castris manere cogebat. 7. Exercitus cum impedimentis in castra ducebatur. 8. Bellum in Provincia a Pirustis gerebatur. 9. Germani ab Romanis ex vicis pellebantur. 10. Nuntii a Gallis in Britanniam mittebantur. 11. Galli Britannos orant ut

auxilium mittant. 12. Germani Labienum orabant ne exercitum trans Rhenum duceret. 13. Caesar Labienum in Gallia relinquit ut portum teneat. 14. Caesar ad Rhenum contendit ut Germanos opprimat. 15. Caesar Labieno imperat ut exercitum ex silvis in agros ducat. 16. Caesar Germanos trans Rhenum remigrare cogit. 17. Galli Labienum rogaverunt ne longius¹ procederet. 18. Labienus orat ut in Gallia relinquatur.² 19. Dumnorix oravit ut in Gallia relinqueretur.² 20. Cum Caesar ad Rhenum procederet, Germani in vicos remigraverunt. 21. Cum Caesar bellum cum Britannis gereret, Labienus in Gallia mansit ut portum teneret. 22. Germani domum contenderunt ut Romanos trans Rhenum pellerent.

¹*longe*, far ; *longius*, farther.

²Rule for tense.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar was leading his army across the Rhine for the purpose of seizing the villages of the Germans.
2. When the Britons were approaching the camp, the Romans advanced to the river.
3. Messengers were being despatched into Germany by the Gauls.
4. The Romans were forcing the Germans to move back to their villages across the Rhine.
5. Caesar was compelling the captives to remain in the camp so that they might not announce his plans to the Gauls.
6. Caesar was advancing to the harbour with the intention of carrying his army across to Britain.
7. The Teneteri were being driven out of Germany by the Suebi.
8. Caesar asks the Gauls to send corn to the army.
9. The Gauls beg the lieu-

tenant to lead the army back into camp. 10. Caesar sends out his cavalry and strengthens his position with a rampart and a trench. 11. Caesar orders Labienus to hold the harbour, for fear that³ he should be compelled to remain in Britain. 12. Caesar hastened to the Rhine with the intention of driving the Germans out of Gaul. 13. When Caesar was advancing to the Rhine the Germans besought him to halt for ten hours. 14. The Gauls requested the Germans to send cavalry and infantry across the Rhine. 15. To prevent a renewal of hostilities on the part of the Gauls, Caesar put the senate to the sword.

³*ne.*

LESSON XXVI.

THIRD CONJUGATION (*continued*).

1. Learn the following Perfect Tenses of Third Conjugation verbs:

<i>Present Infinitive</i>	<i>Perfect Indicative</i>
ducere, <i>to lead</i>	duxit
mittere, <i>to send</i>	misit
procedere, <i>to advance</i>	processit
expellere, <i>to drive out</i>	expulit
gerere, <i>to carry on</i>	gessit
contendere, <i>to hasten</i>	contendit
relinquere, <i>to leave</i>	reliquit
conspicere, <i>to see</i>	conspexit
vertere, <i>to turn</i>	vertit
constituere, <i>to determine</i>	constituit
consistere, <i>to halt</i>	constitit

2. The 3rd Person Plural is formed as in the First and Second Conjugations: *duxerunt, miserunt*, etc.

VOCABULARY.

facere	<i>to make</i>	praemittere	<i>to send forward</i>
coepit	(pf.) <i>he began</i> (has no present, but is also used with a present meaning)	tergum	<i>back</i>
		custodia	<i>guard</i>
		statim	<i>immediately</i>
iter	<i>march</i>	subito	<i>suddenly</i>
traducere	<i>to lead across</i>	metus	<i>fear</i>
paulatim	<i>gradually</i>	opprimere	<i>to surprise, overwhelm</i>
injicere	<i>to throw into</i>	venia	<i>pardon</i>

TABLE OF THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present Infinitive—*mittere*, to send.

	<i>Indicative</i>		<i>Subjunctive</i>	
	3rd Singular	3rd Plural	3rd Singular	3rd Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	mittit	mittunt	mittat	mittant
<i>Imperf.</i>	mittebat	mittebant	mitteret	mitterent
<i>Perf.</i>	misit	miserunt		

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Propter custodias Menapiorum Germani ad flumen procedere non poterant.¹
2. Galli statim ad Labienum legatos de pace² miserunt.
3. Cum Caesar ad Rhenum procederet, Germani terga verterunt.
4. Caesar bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.
5. Cum frumentum compararetur, Caesar iter in Provinciam facere coepit.
6. Britanni impetum Romanorum sustinere non poterant ac terga verterunt.
7. Cum Romani Britanniae appropinquarent,³

¹Imperfect of *potest*.

²*de pace* = concerning peace, i.e., to sue for peace.

³What verbs govern the Dative?

incolae in silvis constiterunt. 8. Britanni paulatim ex castris discedere coeperunt. 9. Germani exercitum sine mora traducere constituerunt. 10. Caesar exercitum Rhenum traducere constituit ut Germanis⁴ metum injiceret. 11. Caesar Germanis metum injicere constituit ne bellum renovarent. 12. Caesar ab Italia contendit ut Pirustas ex Provincia expelleret.

⁴*injicere* (to throw into) takes Accusative of the thing and the Dative of the person. (To throw in fear to the Germans = to inspire the Germans with fear.)

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar hastened to the Rhine without delay with a view to surprising the Germans. 2. Here the Gauls took up their position with the intention of surprising the Romans. 3. Caesar left Labienus in Gaul to collect corn. 4. The Gauls sent ambassadors to Labienus to ask for corn. 5. When Caesar was advancing to the Rhine, the Germans began to make preparations for war. 6. Since the Germans were preparing for war, Caesar sent forward his cavalry. 7. When the cavalry was approaching the Rhine, the Germans came to a sudden⁵ halt on the banks. 8. Ambassadors came to Labienus from Britain to sue for pardon. 9. Since the Germans were again entering upon hostilities, Caesar determined to lead an army across the Rhine. 10. Labienus determined to defend the camp with a rampart and a ditch. 11. Because of the treachery of the Britons, Caesar resolved to set fire to their vil-

. ⁵*subito* is the word for 'suddenly.'

lages. 12. Caesar ordered the Britons to be driven out of the woods. 13. The Ubii are said to be hard pressed by the Suebi. 14. When the Gauls saw the cavalry of the Romans they immediately beat a retreat.⁶

⁶See sentence 3 of the Latin.

LESSON XXVII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

1. The Present Infinitive Active ends in *ire*:

munire, *to fortify*
 desilire, *to jump down*
 audire, *to hear*
 ire, *to go*
 transire, *to go across*
 redire, *to go back*
 servire, *to be devoted to*
 sentire, *to perceive, to feel*
 reperire, *to discover*

2. The Present Infinitive Passive is formed by changing *e* into *i*; thus, *muniri*, to be fortified, etc.

3. The Present Indicative Active is formed thus:

3rd Singular

munit
 desilit
 it
 transit
 redit
 audit

3rd Plural

muniunt
 desiliunt
 eunt (irreg.)
 transeunt (irreg.)
 redeunt (irreg.)
 audiunt

etc., etc.

4. The Passive Voice is formed by adding *ur* as before.

VOCABULARY.

finire	<i>to end</i>	persuadēre , <i>to persuade</i> (govs.
juvare	<i>to aid</i>	Dative of person)
cogere	<i>to compel</i>	

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Romani castra vallo atque fossa muniunt. 2. In proelio Britanni ex equis desiliunt. 3. Propter inopiam frumenti Germani Rhenum transeunt. 4. Suebi gloriae serviunt. 5. Caesar populo semper servit.¹ 6. Locus vallo atque fossa munitur. 7. Galli in silvis ab Labieno reperiuntur. 8. Caesar castra vallo fossaque muniri jussit. 9. Propter inopiam frumenti Caesar bellum finire constituit. 10. Ne Germani Gallos juvarent, Caesar Rhenum transire constituit. 11. Cum Caesar Rheno appropinquaret, Germani domum redire coeperunt. 12. Propter fabrorum inopiam locus muniri non poterat. 13. Germani gloriae servire dicuntur. 14. Propter custodias Menapiorum Germani Rhenum transire non poterant.

¹What verbs govern the Dative? *Imperare, appropinquare, persuadere.* State explicitly when.

Translate into Latin:

1. Since the Germans were again entering upon hostilities, Caesar crosses the Rhine without delay.
2. The Germans cross the Rhine with the intention of renewing the war.
3. When the Gauls were drawing near, Labienus fortifies the camp with a

rampart and a trench. 4. It is said² that the Germans are devoted to war. 5. The Romans leap down from the walls and fight in front of the camp. 6. The letter is found by a slave. 7. Caesar crosses the Rhine in order to terrify³ the Germans. 8. It is said⁴ that the Rhine limits (*finire*) the empire of the Romans. 9. The ambassadors are compelled by Labienus to return home. 10. On account of the scarcity of corn Caesar resolved to bring the war to a close. 11. The noise could be heard at a distance⁵ from the camp. 12. In Caesar's absence Labienus was unable to bring the Gallic war to a close.

²Never say, "It is said that somebody did something"; say, "Somebody is said to have done something."

³*injicere* takes an Accusative of the thing and a Dative of the person.

⁴The Rhine is said to limit, etc.

⁵*procul*, at a distance, far.

LESSON XXVIII.

FOURTH CONJUGATION (*continued*).

1. Observe particularly the spelling of the Imperfect Indicative of this Conjugation: *muniebat, desiliebat*, etc.

2. The Present Subjunctive ends in *iat*: thus, *muniat, desiliat*, etc.

3. The Imperfect Subjunctive is formed as in the other three Conjugations by adding *t* to the Present Infinitive: thus, *muniret, desiliret*, etc.

4. The Passive of these three Tenses is formed by adding *ur* as before: thus, *muniebatur, muniatur, muniretur*, etc.

VOCABULARY.

venire	<i>to come</i>	frigus	<i>cold</i>
colloquium	<i>a conference</i>	impedire	<i>to check</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Cum Caesar insulae appropinquaret, incolae castra vallo fossaque muniebant. 2. Locus ab insulae incolis muniebatur. 3. In proelio Britanni ex equis desiliebant. 4. Caesar populo Romano semper serviebat. 5. Romani frigus¹ in Gallia sentiebant. 6. Caesar quod Provinciam a Pirustis vastari audiebat, eo ab Italia contendit. 7. Caesar Labienus imperat ut castra muniat.² 8. Caesar Labienus imperavit ut castra vallo fossaque muniret.² 9. Labienus nuntium retinet ut consilia Gallorum reperiat. 10. Labienus nuntios retinuit ut consilium Gallorum reperiret. 11. Caesar cum de victoriis Labieni audiret, in Italia manere constituit. 12. Cum Romani castra munirent, Britanni ex silvis veniebant.

¹Same in Accusative and Nominative.

²State the rule for use of Tenses in the Subjunctive.

Translate into Latin:

1. When Caesar was approaching the town, the inhabitants began to jump down from the walls. 2. Caesar sent an army against the Treveri, because they did not come to the conference. 3. When Caesar was approaching the Rhine, the Germans began to fortify the banks. 4. For ten hours Labienus kept the Gauls in check. 5. When the camp was being fortified by Labienus, the Germans began to cross the Rhine. 6. The senate orders Labienus to

come to Italy at once. 7. The senate issued an order to Labienus to come to Italy at once. 8. Caesar detains the ambassadors for ten hours in order to hear about the inhabitants of the islands. 9. Caesar detained the messengers with a view to gaining some information about Britain. 10. When Caesar was listening to the ambassadors, Labienus continued to fortify the camp. 11. When Caesar was giving an audience to the ambassadors of the Gauls, the Germans were crossing the Rhine. 12. Caesar determines to protect his camp with a rampart. 13. At that time Britain was the rendezvous for French fugitives.

LESSON XXIX.

FOURTH CONJUGATION (*continued*).

1. Learn the following Perfects:

munivit
venit (irreg.)
finivit
desiluit (irreg.)

2. Table of Fourth Conjugation.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Present Infinitive: *munire*, to fortify.

	<i>Indicative Mood</i>		<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	
	3rd Singular	3rd Plural	3rd Singular	3rd Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	munīt	munīunt	munīat	munīant
<i>Imperf.</i>	muniebat	muniebant	muniret	munirent
<i>Perf.</i>	munivit	muniverunt		

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Infinitive: *muniri*, to be fortified.

	<i>Indicative Mood</i>		<i>Subjunctive Mood</i>	
	3rd Singular	3rd Plural	3rd Singular	3rd Plural
<i>Pres.</i>	munitur	muniuntur	muniatur	muniantur
<i>Imperf.</i>	muniebatur	muniebantur	muniretur	munirentur

VOCABULARY.

nihil	<i>nothing (indeclinable)</i>	mare	<i>sea (same in nom. and acc.)</i>
pervenire ad	<i>to arrive at</i>	ponere	<i>to place</i>
convenire	<i>to come together</i>	undique	<i>from all sides</i>
ubi	<i>when</i>	imperata	<i>demands, commands (pl. 2nd decl.)</i>
pro	<i>before (prep. gov. abl.)</i>		
quaerere	<i>to enquire</i>	facere	<i>to do, make</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Nuntius nihil de victoria Germanorum audivit.
2. Caesar cum de insula quaereret, nihil reperiebat.
3. Caesar ubi ad Rhenum pervenit, castra in ripa posuit.
4. Romani Rhenum transierunt ut Germanis metum injicerent.
5. Caesar flumen transiit ut agros Germanorum vastaret.
6. Ubi Caesar ad mare pervenit, legati ex Britannia ad eum (him) venerunt.¹
7. Labienus consilia Gallorum ex nuntiis audivit.
8. Romani locum vallo atque fossa muniverunt.
9. Propter inopiam frumenti Caesar bellum Germanorum finivit.
10. Caesar ubi bellum Germanorum finivit, in Provinciam contendit ut Pirustas expelleret.

¹The Perfect of *venire* is *venit*.

Translate into Latin:

1. The Germans crossed the Rhine with the intention of devastating the land of the Gauls.
2. As

the Germans were crossing the Rhine, Labienus fortified his camp with a rampart and a trench. 3. The Gauls assembled from all quarters to hear the demands of Labienus. 4. When Caesar was absent in Italy, the Germans came to the Rhine with the intention of crossing into Gaul and devastating the country.² 5. On account of the scarcity of corn Caesar speedily brought the Gallic war to a close. 6. Caesar crossed the Rhine to terrify the Germans and liberate the Ubii. 7. The senate commanded the people to comply³ with the demands of Labienus. 8. Caesar's inquiries about the islands came to nothing. 9. When the Gauls drew near, the Romans jumped down from the walls and took up their position in front of the gates. 10. To render their own return impossible, the Helvetii burnt their towns and villages.

²What does "country" mean in this sentence? In what other senses is "country" used?

³*facere*.

LESSON XXX.

PERFECT INFINITIVE AND PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE ACTIVE.

1. The Perfect Infinitive Active is formed from the Perfect Indicative Active by changing *t* into *sse*: thus,

Perfect Indicative

occupavit

jussit

duxit

munivit

Perfect Infinitive

occupavisse, *to have seized*

jussisse, *to have ordered*

duxisse, *to have led*

munivisse, *to have fortified*

2. The Pluperfect Subjunctive Active is formed by adding *t* to the Perfect Infinitive Active: thus,

occupavisset, *had seized*

jussisset, *had ordered*

duxisset, *had led*

munivisset, *had fortified*

3. *Cum* generally takes the Subjunctive Mood with the Pluperfect Tense as well as with the Imperfect.

VOCABULARY.

cognoscere	<i>to learn</i> (perf. indic., <i>cognovit</i>)	instruere	<i>to construct, arrange</i> (perf., <i>instruxit</i>)
conjurare	<i>to form a league</i>		
acies	<i>line of battle</i>	accedere	<i>to approach</i> (perf., <i>accessit</i>)
flumen	<i>a river</i> (same in acc. and nom.)	quod	<i>which</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Germani Rhenum transiisse¹ dicuntur.
2. Caesar exercitum in Britanniam traduxisse dicitur.
3. Treveri Germanos sollicitavisse dicebantur.
4. Caesar in Gallia decem annos mansisse dicitur.
5. Caesar senatum necavisse dicitur ut ab indigenis insulae laudaretur.
6. Indigenae insulae praedam ex agris in silvas portavisse dicuntur.
7. Senatus servos necavisse dicitur ne consilia populo nuntiarentur.
8. Galli Labienum oravisse dicuntur ne longius procederet.
9. Cum Caesar in Italia abesset Galli bellum subito² renovavisse dicuntur.
- 10.

¹The "v" is always omitted with compounds of *ire*, to go (e.g., *redire*, to go back; *transire*, to go across).

²suddenly.

Quod³ cum Caesar cognovisset, in Galliam exercitum duxit. 11. Germani cum Rhenum transiissent, agros Gallorum vastaverunt. 12. Quod cum Germani audivissent ad Labienum legatos miserunt. 13. Cum esset Caesar in Gallia in hibernis, Germani contra Romanos conjurabant. 14. Eo cum de improvviso⁴ venisset, Remi ad eum (him) legatos miserunt. 15. Caesar cum ab Remis consilia Belgarum cognovisset, flumen Axonam exercitum traducere maturavit. 16. Cum ibi praesidium posuisset, ad Belgas contendit. 17. Cum Labienus aciem instruxisset Galli statim constiterunt. 18. Germani cum adventum Romanorum cognovissent, ad Labienum sine mora legatos miserunt. 19. Cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, legati ad eum venerunt. 20. Caesar cum de Britannis quaereret nihil reperiēbat. 21. Cum equitatum praemisisset castra moveri jussit. 22. Cum Galli equitatum Romanorum appropinquare vidissent, terga verterunt.

³*quod* has two meanings, "which" or "this," and "because."

⁴*de improvviso*, unexpectedly.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar is said to have put the senate to death in order to pacify the people. 2. Dumnorix is said to have seized the sovereign power in Gaul. 3. It is said that Dumnorix renewed the war for the purpose of seizing the crown. 4. It is thought that a slave divulged the plans of the Gauls to the Romans. 5. The Romans are said to have fortified their camp with a rampart and a trench. 6. It is said that Caesar brought the war to a close in order to pacify

the army. 7. The general is said to have investigated the matter. 8. Caesar is said to have spared⁵ the inhabitants of the island. 9. It is thought⁶ that the Britons supplied the Gauls with corn. 10. It is supposed that Caesar crossed the Rhine to frighten⁷ the Germans. 11. Caesar is said to have put the slaves to death to prevent them from divulging his plans to the islanders. 12. It is said that the Greeks besieged Troy for ten years. 13. When the Gauls beat a retreat, Caesar sent out the cavalry. 14. On seeing this, Caesar sent the cavalry back. 15. After conquering the Gauls Caesar is said to have crossed into Britain. 16. When he had ordered corn to be brought into the camp, he hastened to the Rhine. 17. On his arrival there, he ordered the camp to be fortified with a rampart and a trench. 18. Now that he had conquered Gaul he resolved to cross the Rhine with a view to terrifying the Germans. 19. When Crassus arrived in Aquitania he immediately began to collect cavalry. 20. On hearing of the arrival of the Romans the Sontiates immediately got their forces together. 21. Although they had sent ambassadors to him,⁸ they continued their preparations for war.

⁵*conservare*. ⁶The Britons are thought, etc.

⁷*injicere* takes an Accusative and a Dative. ⁸*eum*.

LESSON XXXI.

THIRD DECLENSION.

1. The terminations* of the Third Declension are:

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	es
<i>Gen.</i> is	um
<i>Dat.</i> i	ibus
<i>Acc.</i> em	es
<i>Abl.</i> e	ibus

2. To decline a noun of the Third Declension, find the Genitive Case in your vocabulary, cut off the termination *is*, and add the terminations as given above.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> eques, <i>horseman</i>	equites, <i>horsemen, cavalry</i>
<i>Gen.</i> equitis	equitum
<i>Dat.</i> equiti	equitibus
<i>Acc.</i> equitem	equites
<i>Abl.</i> equite	equitibus

*Other terminations, such as *i* in the Ablative Singular, *ium* in the Genitive Plural, *is* for *es* in the Nominative and Accusative Plural, should not be learned till required.

VOCABULARY.

(The Genitive Singular of each Third Declension noun is given.)

conscribere	<i>to enroll (pf. indic., conscripsit)</i>
considerere	<i>to settle, encamp</i>
conjungere	<i>to join together</i>
flumen, fluminis	<i>river</i>
vulgus	<i>common people</i>
multitudo, multitudinis	<i>multitude</i>
homo, hominis	<i>man</i>
mercator, mercatoris	<i>merchant</i>
hostis, hostis	<i>enemy</i>
confluens, confluentis	<i>confluence</i>
latitudo, latitudinis	<i>breadth</i>
rapiditas, rapiditatis	<i>rapidity</i>
altitudo, altitudinis	<i>depth</i>
pons, pontis	<i>bridge</i>
obsidio, obsidionis	<i>siege</i>
ordo, ordinis	<i>order, rank</i>
dux, ducis	<i>leader</i>
pedes, peditis	<i>foot soldier</i>
tempesta, tempestatis	<i>storm</i>
tempus, temporis	<i>time</i>
cohors, cohortis	<i>cohort</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. In¹ eo flumine pons erat.
2. Germani ad ripam fluminis agros, aedificia, vicosque habebant.
3. In Germania vulgus² mercatores in oppidis circumstat.
4. Eo³ anno Germani cum multitudine hominum Rhenum transierunt.
5. Hostes cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, in flumen desiluerunt.
6. Ubii Caesarem magnopere orabant ut

¹In with the Ablative means "on" as well as "in."

²Same in Accusative and Nominative. Which is it here? How do you know?

³Eo is sometimes an adv. meaning "to that place," sometimes a demonstrative meaning "that."

Rhenum exercitum traduceret. 7. Propter latitudinem, rapiditatem, altitudinemque fluminis Caesar pontem facere non poterat. 8. Caesar exercitum Rhenum traducere constituit ut Ubios obsidione liberaret. 9. Romani, quod neque ordines servare neque imperata ducis audire poterant, magnopere perturbabantur. 10. Cum paulo⁴ longius a castris processisset, equites ab hostibus premi vidit.⁵ 11. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant. 12. Ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, Britanniam relinquere constituit. 13. Caesar quinque legiones in Gallia conscripsit. 14. Propter fertilitatem loci Germani in Gallia considebant. 15. Ibi praesidium ponit et Sabinum cum sex cohortibus relinquit.

⁴An adv. meaning "a little" (used generally with Comparatives, with *ante* and *post*).

⁵Form the Present Infinitive Passive of *laudare*, *monere*, *premere*, *munire*, and give the meaning of each.

Translate into Latin:

1. Owing to the breadth of the ditch and the height of the wall Caesar was unable to take the town by assault. 2. Four legions with their baggage hastened from Italy to the Rhine. 3. Because the enemy were not far off, he ordered the cavalry to advance. 4. Six legions fought for ten hours on the banks of the river. 5. Caesar ordered the tribunes of the soldiers to effect a junction⁶ of the legions. 6. Caesar gave instructions to Labienus to send the cavalry out of the camp. 7. On account of

⁶Use *imperare* and say, "that the legions should join themselves together" (*se conjungere*).

the flight of the cavalry, the infantry was unable to sustain the attack. 8. The ships of the Romans were kept back⁷ by storms. 9. Owing to the violence of the storm the ships were not able to reach Britain. 10. That winter the Germans, with a host of men, women, and children, crossed the Rhine. 11. On receiving⁸ the hostages he led his army back to the sea. 12. Having waited a considerable time in vain for his ships, Caesar demanded a fleet from the Britons. 13. On receiving a fleet from the Britons Caesar took his army over to Gaul.

⁷Imperfect of *detinere*. ⁸*accipere* (Perf., *accepit*).

LESSON XXXII.

THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

1. Nouns ending in *en* (Gen. *inis*) and those in *us* (Gen. *ris*) have the Accusative same as Nominative, and in the Plural these cases end in *a*: thus,

	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>	<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	flumen, <i>river</i>	flumina	opus, <i>work</i>	opera
<i>Gen.</i>	fluminis	fluminum	operis	operum
<i>Dat.</i>	flumini	fluminibus	operi	operibus
<i>Acc.</i>	flumen	flumina	opus	opera
<i>Abl.</i>	flumine	fluminibus	opere	operibus

2. The time when anything is done or takes place is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition: thus, *eo anno*, in that year; *eo tempore*, at that time; *ea hieme*, in that winter.

VOCABULARY.

ferre	<i>to carry</i> (pf. indic., <i>tulit</i>)
capere	<i>to take</i>
accipere	<i>to receive</i>
se recipere	<i>to take oneself back, retreat</i>
frustra	<i>in vain</i>
navis, navis	<i>ship</i>
miles, militis	<i>soldier</i>
mare	<i>sea</i> (acc. same as nom.)
aquilifer	(2nd decl.) <i>standard-bearer</i>
pax, pacis	<i>peace</i>
puer	(2nd decl.) <i>boy</i>
mulier, mulieris	<i>woman</i>
postulare	<i>to demand</i>
turpitude, turpitudinis	<i>disgrace</i>
classis, -is	<i>a fleet</i>
clamor, clamoris	<i>shout</i>
obses, obsidis	<i>hostage</i>
gubernator, -toris	<i>pilot</i>
litus, -oris	<i>shore</i>

REVIEW OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.*

Postulare, *to demand*

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> postulat	<i>Perf.</i> postulavit
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> postulat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> postulet	
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> postulare	<i>Plpf.</i> postulavisset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	postulare	<i>Perf.</i> postulavisse

In giving the table of a verb after this, the Perfect Tenses will be arranged in a column by themselves, and the tenses which are not perfect in a separate column as above. The reason for this arrangement is that all Perfect Tenses (Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future Perfect) are formed from the Perfect Indicative.

*If necessary for examination requirements, the teacher may now begin a systematic drill in grammatical forms from the Appendix.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Propter inopiam navium¹ Germani Rhenum transire non poterant. 2. Naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto² constitui non poterant. 3. Milites de navibus cum alacritate desiluerunt. 4. Cum milites propter altitudinem maris cunctarentur,³ aquilifer decimae⁴ legionis ex navi desiluit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. 5. Interim legati ab hostibus ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. 6. Interim Romani impetum hostium quattuor horas sustinuerunt. 7. Cum Caesar ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque legati⁵ de pace ad eum venerunt. 8. Caesar militibus imperavit ut impetum hostium fortiter sustinerent. 9. Romani terra marique⁶ bellum gerere constituerunt. 10. Propter hostium⁷ multitudinem equites fugerunt. 11. Postridie equites, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, impetum hostium fortiter sustinuerunt. 12. Propter tranquillitatem maris naves ex loco moveri non poterant. 13. Caesar cum aliquamdiu naves frustra exspectavisset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat,⁸ classem a Britannis postulavit.

¹*navis* has *ium* in the Genitive Plural instead of *um*, and *i* in the Ablative Singular instead of *e*.

²deep. ³were hesitating. ⁴tenth.

⁵as ambassadors. ⁶*mare* has *i* in the Ablative instead of *e*.

⁷Like *navis* in the Genitive Plural. ⁸was near.

Translate into Latin:

1. Here the Romans awaited the arrival of the enemy for five hours. 2. On account of the prox-

imity⁹ of the enemy Labienus did not wait for orders from Caesar.¹⁰ 3. Caesar orders ships to be built and pilots to be summoned. 4. Because he had not a supply of ships Caesar resolved to build a bridge. 5. Caesar wrote to Labienus to carry on the war by sea and land. 6. Labienus persuades the soldiers to build a wall around the town. 7. The general persuades the slave to cross over to the camp of the enemy. 8. On hearing the shout of the standard-bearer, the soldiers immediately jumped down from the ship and began to advance against the enemy. 9. That year Caesar received hostages from a great number¹¹ of states. 10. A slave was the bearer of the letter from Caesar to the senate. 11. On saying this the standard-bearer jumped overboard and began to carry the standard towards the enemy. 12. Meanwhile the Britons were advancing boldly from the shore with the intention of driving the Romans back to their ships.

⁹*propinquitas*.

¹⁰What case? On what does this prepositional phrase depend?

¹¹*multitudo*.

LESSON XXXIII.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE CONSTRUCTION.

1. Observe the following:

Legatus dicit (putat) Caesarem adesse. The lieutenant-general says (thinks) that Caesar is present.

2. After a verb of speaking or thinking the English noun clause beginning with the conjunction "that"

(expressed or understood) is translated into Latin as follows:

(a) The conjunction "that" is always omitted.

(b) The subject of the noun clause stands in the Accusative.

(c) The verb in the noun clause is in the Infinitive Mood.

This is called the Accusative and the Infinitive Construction. We sometimes use the same construction in English. We can say: "The lieutenant declares Caesar to be present." The difference is, we do not often use this construction; the Romans always do.

REVIEW OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Tenere, to hold

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> tenet	<i>Perf.</i> tenuit
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> tenebat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> teneat	
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> teneret	<i>Plpf.</i> tenuisset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	tenere	<i>Perf.</i> tenuisse

Write out the Plural Number and the Passive Voice.

Declension of *legio, a legio*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> legio	legiones
<i>Gen.</i> legionis	legionum
<i>Dat.</i> legioni	legionibus
<i>Acc.</i> legionem	legiones
<i>Abl.</i> legione	legionibus

The following are declined like *legio*: *obsidio*, siege; *oratio*, speech.

VOCABULARY.

explorator, -oris	<i>scout</i>	longe	<i>far</i>
finis, -is	<i>end (pl. territory)</i>	pars, -tis	<i>part</i>
solicitare	<i>to stir up (to rebellion)</i>	posse	<i>to be able</i>
facere	<i>to make</i>	liberi	<i>children (2nd decl. pl.)</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Nuntius dicit Britannos ex castris discedere.
2. Nuntius dicit Germanos Rhenum transire.
3. Explorator dicit Caesarem Rhenum transire ut Ubios obsidione liberet.
4. Labienus nuntiat Gallos bellum renovare.
5. Explorator renuntiat hostes castra vallo fossaque defendere.
6. Caesar putat Labienum impetum Gallorum sustinere non posse.
7. Nuntius dicit Ubios ab Suebis finibus expelli.
8. Caesar dicit Suebos gloriae servire.
9. Explorator Britannos esse in silvis renuntiat.
10. Caesar dicit Britannos in proeliis ex equis desilire.
11. Explorator Britannis renuntiat naves insulae appropinquare.
12. Caesar audit Provinciam a Pirustis vastari.
13. Nuntius dicit Germanos ripas fluminis munire.
14. Exploratores nuntiant Britannos ex silvis venire.
15. Labienus putat Caesarem non longe abesse.
16. Labienus dicit propter frumenti inopiam Caesarem bellum finire.
17. Explorator renuntiat Germanos domum trans Rhenum redire.
18. Explorator renuntiat Germanos a Treveris sollicitari.

Translate into Latin:

1. The scout announces that the Germans are crossing the Rhine. 2. The messenger says that the camp of the enemy is being fortified. 3. The scout brings back word that part of the cavalry is crossing the river. 4. Caesar thinks that the Germans are waiting for their cavalry. 5. Caesar hears that the Gauls are devastating the Province. 6. The scout brings back a report that the islanders are carrying the plunder from the fields into the woods. 7. The messenger says that he is waiting for Caesar's arrival. 8. Labienus says that Caesar is investigating the matter. 9. A scout informs the Britons that the Romans are approaching the island with a great number of ships. 10. Caesar says that there is a bridge on that river. 11. The scout announces that the cavalry is being hard pressed¹ by the enemy. 12. Caesar thinks that Labienus is not able to take the town by assault. 13. The messenger says that Caesar is not able to construct a bridge because of the depth of the river. 14. The scout reports that the forces of the enemy are advancing to the banks of the river. 15. Caesar thinks that the cavalry is not able to sustain the attack of the enemy. 16. Caesar says that the Britons jump down from their horses in battle. 17. A messenger informs Caesar that the Veneti are making preparations for war both by land and sea. 18. A scout brings back word that the Suebi are sending their women and children into

¹*premere.*

the woods. 19. They say that Galba is the king of the Bellovaci. 20. Caesar is informed that it is the intention² of the Helvetii to direct their march through the land of the Sequani into the territory of the Santones. 21. According to Caesar, Britain was densely populated.

²Say, "it is in the mind to the Helvetii."

LESSON XXXIV.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (*continued*).

1. (a) Use the Present Infinitive when the time is the same as that of the main verb.

(b) Use the Perfect Infinitive when the time is previous to that of the main verb.

2. Examples of (a):

He says (now) that Caesar is present (now).

He said (yesterday) that Caesar was present (yesterday).

The time expressed by "is present" in the first sentence is the same as the time expressed by the main verb (says). And the time expressed by "was present" in the second sentence is the same time as the main verb (said). Therefore use the Present Infinitive in both sentences: thus,

Dicit Caesarem adesse.

Dixit Caesarem adesse.

3. Examples of (b):

He says (now) that Caesar was present (yesterday).

He said (yesterday) that Caesar was (or had been) present (the day before yesterday).

The time expressed by "was present" in the first sentence is previous to the time expressed by the main verb (says), and the time expressed by "was" (or "had been") "present" in the second sentence is previous to the time expressed by the main verb (said). Therefore use the Perfect Infinitive in both sentences: thus,

Dicit Caesarem adfuisse.

Dixit Caesarem adfuisse.

VOCABULARY.

respondere	(pf., <i>respondit</i>) to reply	obsidere	(pf., <i>obsedit</i>) to be- siege
scribere	(pf., <i>scripsit</i>) to write	oppidanus	an inhabitant of a town
incendere	(pf., <i>incendit</i>) to set fire to	arma	arms (pl. 2nd decl.)
putare	to suppose		

REVIEW OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Scribere, to write

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> scribit <i>Imperf.</i> scribebat	<i>Perf.</i> scripsit
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> scribat <i>Imperf.</i> scriberet	<i>Plpf.</i> scripsisset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	scribere	<i>Perf.</i> scripsisse

Remember the change of vowel in the 3rd Plural Present Indicative of this Conjugation.

Declension of *hostis*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> <i>hostis</i>	<i>hostes</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>hostis</i>	<i>hostium</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>hosti</i>	<i>hostibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>hostem</i>	<i>hostes</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>hoste</i>	<i>hostibus</i>

N. B.—The Genitive Plural of words ending in *is* and *es* is *ium* instead of *um*, if they have the same number of syllables in the Genitive and Nominative Singular. The spelling *is* for *es* in the Plural need not yet be gone into.

The following are like *hostis*, but they have the Ablative Singular in *i* instead of *e*: *navis*, a ship; *ignis*, fire.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Explorator renuntiat Germanos Rhenum transire.
2. Explorator renuntiat Germanos Rhenum transiisse.
3. Explorator renuntiavit Germanos Rhenum transiisse.
4. Explorator renuntiavit Germanos Rhenum transire.
5. Caesar dicit legatos de pace in castra venisse.¹
6. Legati responderunt Romanorum imperium Rhenum² finire.
7. Caesar scribit Labienum decem horas castra defendisse.
8. Nuntius dixit Labienum legatos in castris retinuisse ut rem exploraret.
9. Explorator renuntiavit hostes vicos incendere.
10. Explorator renuntiavit hostes agros Provinciae vastavisse.
11. Caesar Provinciam

¹The Perfect Indicative of *venire* is *vēnit*.

²Give the reason for the case of *imperium* and of *Rhenum*.

a Pirustis vastari audiebat.³ 12. Explorator dixit hostes castra vallo fossaque munire. 13. Germani non putaverunt exercitum Romanorum Rhenum transire posse. 14. Explorator renuntiavit hostes copiam navium comparavisse. 15. Suebi per exploratores audierunt Romanos pontem facere. 16. Caesar vidit equites ab hostibus premi. 17. Caesar, cum equites ab hostibus premi vidisset, statim auxilium misit. 18. Fama est Graecos Trojam decem annos obsedissee. 19. Nuntius dixit Caesarem milites ex oppido exire jussisse ne oppidani injuriam acciperent. 20. Explorator Caesari renuntiavit oppidanos arma in oppido celavisse. 21. Caesar cum Helvetios per Provinciam iter facere audisset, in Galliam contendit.

*Give the force of the Imperfect Tense.

Translate into Latin:

1. The scout brought news that the Romans were fortifying their camp with a rampart and a trench. 2. The messenger said that the enemy had attacked Cotta's camp. 3. Caesar learned through⁴ his scouts that the Pirustae were devastating the Province. 4. It came to Caesar's ears that the islanders were making preparations for war. 5. The Germans did not think that Caesar could cross the Rhine without ships. 6. The scout brought back word that the enemy were concealing arms in the villages. 7. Caesar saw that the cavalry was unable to sustain the attack of the enemy. 8. Caesar heard that the Gauls were carrying corn from the fields into the

⁴*per.*

towns. 9. On hearing that the Gauls had again entered upon hostilities, Caesar hastened to the army. 10. Hearing that the Veneti had determined to wage war by land and sea, Caesar ordered ships to be built at once. 11. The story goes that Romulus held the sovereign power for thirty⁵ years. 12. Caesar heard that the Helvetii had led a part of their forces across the river. 13. The Germans had encamped on unfavourable ground under the supposition that the Romans were still on the other side of the Rhine.

**triginta.*

LESSON XXXV.

THE ACCUSATIVE AND INFINITIVE (*continued*).

1. Compare:

(a) *Balbus dixit se amicis servire.* Balbus said that he (Balbus) was devoted to his friends.

(b) *Balbus dixit eum amicis servire.* Balbus said that he (someone else) was devoted to his friends.

2. *Se* and *eum* are both Accusative Case, the construction being, of course, the Accusative and Infinitive construction after the verb of speaking, *dixit*; but observe that *se* is used for "he" when Balbus is meant, and *eum* when somebody not Balbus is referred to.

3. The Plural of *se* is *se*, and the Plural of *eum* is *eos*.

(a) *Romani dixerunt se bello servire.* The Romans said that they (themselves) were devoted to war.

(b) *Romani dixerunt eos bello servire.* The Ro-

mans said that they (some other people) were devoted to war.

VOCABULARY.

collis, -is	hill	disponere (pf., <i>disposuit</i>)	<i>to place at intervals</i>
vidēre (pf., <i>vidit</i>)	<i>to see</i>		
rex, regis	king	movēre (pf., <i>mōrit</i>)	<i>to move</i>
negare	<i>deny, say—not</i>	amicus	friend
foedus, -eris	<i>a treaty (same in acc. and nom.)</i>		

REVIEW OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Munire, *to fortify.*

ACTIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> munit (3rd pl. <i>muniunt</i>)	<i>Perf.</i> munivit
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> muniebat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> muniat	
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> muniret	<i>Plpf.</i> munivisset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	munire	<i>Perf.</i> munivisse

Notice the two vowels *ie* before the termination of the Imperfect Indicative of this Conjugation.

Declension of *dux, a leader*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> dux, <i>a leader.</i>	duces
<i>Gen.</i> ducis	ducum
<i>Dat.</i> duci	ducibus
<i>Acc.</i> ducem	duces
<i>Abl.</i> duce	ducibus

rex, a king

<i>Nom.</i> rex	reges
<i>Gen.</i> regis	regum
<i>Dat.</i> regi	regibus
<i>Acc.</i> regem	reges
<i>Abl.</i> rege	regibus

Like *dur*: *pax* (*pacis*), peace; *vox* (*vocis*), voice; *iudex* (*iudicis*), judge.

Like *rex*: *lex* (*legis*) law.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar dixit se eo anno Rhenum transiisse.
2. Legati Gallorum se de pace venisse dixerunt.
3. Explorator renuntiavit eos ad castra venire.
4. Explorator renuntiavit se castra hostium in colle vidisse.
5. Caesar dicit se exercitum Rhenum traduxisse ut Germanis metum injiceret.
6. Caesar dicit legatos de pace ad se venisse.
7. Labienus dixit se ad eum milites misisse.
8. Exploratores renuntiaverunt Galbam esse regem.
9. Galli se contra Romanos conjuravisse negaverunt.
10. Fama est Romanos cum Hasdrubale foedus renovavisse.
11. Dicunt Hannibalem in ripa fluminis elephantos disposuisse.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar says that he crossed the Rhine to help the Ubii.
2. The scout announced that they had moved their camp.
3. The Gauls said that they were friendly to the Romans.
4. He said that he was an enemy to the Romans.
5. The scout brought back word that they had fortified their camp with a rampart and a trench.
6. Caesar said that he praised them because of their valour.
7. The scout reported that the enemy had concealed themselves in the woods.
8. The Ubii said that they had given hostages to the Suebi.
9. The scouts reported to the

Britons that they had seen the ships of the Romans.

10. They say that Caesar on his arrival put the captives to death for fear that² his plans should be reported to the enemy. 11. The non-arrival of the supplies excited in the mind of Caesar a suspicion that the Helvetii were playing him false.

²Render "for fear that" by one word.

LESSON XXXVI.

DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Many Latin verbs are Passive in form but Active in meaning. Such verbs are called Deponent verbs.

2. The following are a few which belong to the First Conjugation:

hortari, to exhort

conari, to attempt

arbitrari, to think

cunctari, to delay (intr.)

susplicari, to suspect

3. The Present Indicative of these verbs is as follows: *hortatur, conatur*, etc.

4. The Imperfect Indicative is: *hortabatur, conabatur*, etc.

5. Verbs signifying to ask, to command (except *jubere* and *vetare*), to persuade and to exhort take *ut* (or *ne*, if a negative is required) with the Subjunctive Mood instead of the Infinitive as in English: as (see Lesson XXI.),

Caesar milites hortatur ut fortiter pugnent. Caesar

exhorts the soldiers to fight bravely (literally, that they should fight bravely).

Caesar milites hortabatur ne castris excederent.
Caesar was exhorting the soldiers not to depart from the camp (literally, that they should not depart).

VOCABULARY.

exire (pf., <i>exiit</i>)	<i>to go out</i>
desilire (pf., <i>desiluit</i>)	<i>to jump down</i>
aquilifer	<i>standard-bearer</i>

Declension of *miles*, a soldier.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> miles	milites
<i>Gen.</i> militis	militum
<i>Dat.</i> militi	militibus
<i>Acc.</i> militem	milites
<i>Abl.</i> milite	militibus

Like *miles* are declined: *eques* (*equitis*), a horse-man; *pedes* (*peditis*), a foot-soldier; *obses* (*obsidis*), a hostage.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar milites hortatur ut impetum hostium fortiter sustineant.
2. Caesar milites hortabatur ut impetum hostium fortiter sustinerent.
3. Labienus equites expectari arbitrabatur.
4. Orgetorix Casticum hortabatur ut regnum occuparet.
5. Helvetios hortatur ut vicos et aedificia incendiant.
6. Helvetios hortabatur ne legatos ad Caesarem mitterent.
7. Helvetii e finibus cum mulieribus liberisque exire conabantur.
8. Dum milites cunctantur,¹ aquilifer

¹See first footnote on next page.

e navi desiluit. 9. Helvetii per Provinciam iter facere conabantur. 10. Caesar, cum Helvetios per Provinciam iter facere audisset, Labienum hortatur ut ad se statim veniret. 11. Romani Gallos conjurare suspicantur. 12. Caesar Germanos contra Romanos conjurare suspicabatur. 13. Divitiacus Aeduos hortabatur ne bellum renovarent. 14. Themistocles persuasit populo ut classis centum navium aedificaretur..

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar exhorts Labienus to fortify the camp with a rampart and a ditch. 2. Caesar was exhorting Labienus to fortify the camp with a rampart and a ditch. 3. Whilst¹ the Romans were making preparations for war Hannibal captured Saguntum by assault. 4. Caesar was exhorting Labienus not to destroy the fields of the Gauls. 5. Caesar suspected that the Gauls had hidden the corn in the woods. 6. The standard-bearer was exhorting the soldiers to jump down from the ship. 7. Caesar thinks that the cavalry of the Gauls is behind the woods. 8. Caesar was exhorting the soldiers to remain in the camp for ten hours. 9. Labienus suspects that the Gauls have asked the Germans to cross the Rhine. 10. The Germans were attempting to cross the Rhine. 11. When it came to Caesar's ears² that the Helvetii intended to march through the Province, he hastened from Italy into Gaul.

¹*dum* (whilst) takes the "Historic Present," which is equal to a past tense.

²Translate the meaning.

LESSON XXXVII.

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION (*continued*).

<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>
hortetur	hortaretur
conetur	conaretur
arbitretur	arbitraretur
cunctetur	cunctaretur
suspicietur	suspicaretur

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar ad Rhenum contendit ne Germani transire conarentur. 2. Labienus milites monuit ne cunctarentur. 3. Cum hostes flumen transire conarentur, Labienus pontem rescindi iussit. 4. Caesar cum hostes adesse suspicaretur castra vallo fossaque muniri iussit. 5. Ne Caesar flumen transire conaretur, barbari ripas munire coeperunt. 6. Trinobantes Caesarem hortantur ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat. 7. Caesar Trinobantes hortabatur ut frumentum ad se mitterent. 8. Explorator hostes ad castra venire renuntiavit. 9. Caesar, cum copias Belgarum ad se venire vidisset, flumen Axonam exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit.

Translate into Latin:

1. When Caesar was exhorting the soldiers, the enemy dashed out of the woods. 2. When the soldiers were delaying on account of the depth of the water, the standard-bearer jumped down from the

ship and made for the shore. 3. Since the enemy were attempting to cut down¹ the bridge, Caesar hastened to the bank of the river. 4. Since Caesar suspected that the Gauls were conspiring against the Romans, he determined to pass the winter in Gaul. 5. He therefore² exhorts the soldiers to fortify their winter-quarters without delay. 6. When Hannibal was hesitating on account of the lack of corn, the Romans crossed the mountains. 7. The scout brought back word that he had seen the enemy's ships in the river. 8. Caesar therefore ordered the bank of the river to be fortified. 9. When he had completed the fortifications on the bank of the river, he placed guards here and there³ opposite⁴ the enemy's ships to prevent them from landing.

¹*rescindere.* ²*itaque.*

³*disponere*, to place at intervals.

⁴*contra* (prep. gov. Acc.).

LESSON XXXVIII.

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

1. *Present Infinitive*

vereri, to fear

Present Indicative

veretur

Imperfect Indicative

verebatur

Present Subjunctive

vereatur

Imperfect Subjunctive

vereretur

2. After verbs of fearing "that" and "lest" are translated by *ne*, "that not" by *ut*: as,

Caesar veretur ne hostes portum occupent. Caesar fears that (or lest) the enemy may seize the harbour.

Caesar veretur ut Labienus portum occupet. Caesar fears that Labienus may not seize the harbour.

N. B.—After a verb of fearing, the English often has “will”: as, Caesar fears that the enemy *will* seize the harbour. The Latin Present Subjunctive has therefore the force of a Future Tense in this construction.

VOCABULARY.

relinquere (pf., <i>reliquit</i>) to	timere to fear
leave	reperire to find
tueri to guard	deserere to abandon

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar verebatur ne hostes portum occuparent.
2. Caesar ad mare contendit ne hostes portum occuparent.
3. Labienus verebatur ut Caesar veniret.
4. Labienus verebatur ne hostes venirent.
5. Caesar Labienum in Gallia relinquit ut portum tueatur.
6. Caesar Labienum in Gallia relinquit ut portum tueretur.
7. Romani verebantur ne Hannibal bellum renovaret.
8. Labienus verebatur ut Galli obsides mitterent.
9. Germani verebantur ne Caesar Rhenum transiret.
10. Germani verebantur ut Romani in Galliam redirent.
11. Dumnorix oravit ut in Gallia relinqueretur quod¹ mare timeret.

¹*quod* (because) takes the Subjunctive if the reason is not that of the historian. Caesar is the historian.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar left Labienus in Gaul to protect the harbour.
2. Labienus feared that the Germans would attack the camp.
3. Labienus feared that the scout would not discover the enemy's camp.
4. Caesar

feared the ships would not come. 5. Caesar ordered Labienus to watch over the hostages. 6. The senate feared that Caesar was making preparations for war. 7. Since he feared that the Germans would storm the camp, Labienus sent a messenger to Caesar. 8. Labienus was protecting the harbour lest the Gauls should seize the ships. 9. The senate ordered Caesar to guard the towns of the Aedui. 10. Caesar feared the Aedui would not send cavalry. 11. Since he feared that he would be deserted by the chiefs, Dumnorix sent envoys to Caesar. 12. Because² he feared a renewal of hostilities on the part of the Gauls, Caesar hastened to the army.

²What mood is *quod* to take this time? Whose reason is this? Caesar is the historian.

LESSON XXXIX.

DEPONENT VERBS OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

uti, to use (governs Ablative)

<i>Present Indicative</i>	<i>Imperfect Indicative</i>
utitur (pl. utuntur)	utebatur
<i>Present Subjunctive</i>	<i>Imperfect Subjunctive</i>
utatur	uteretur

VOCABULARY.

pes, pedis	<i>a foot</i>	magnopere	<i>greatly, earnestly</i>
sinere	<i>to permit</i>	longius	<i>farther</i>
reverti	<i>to return</i> [perf., <i>reverti</i> (act. form); partic., <i>reversus</i> (depon.)]	conscribere	<i>to enrol</i>
		comperire	<i>to discover</i>
proficisci	<i>to set out</i>	ulcisci	<i>to take vengeance on</i>
queri	<i>to complain</i>	mandare	<i>to give an order to</i>
sequi	<i>to follow, accompany</i>	hiberna (pl. 2nd decl.)	<i>winter-quarters</i>
		pervenire	<i>to arrive</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Equis Germani importatis¹ non utuntur. 2. Germani saepe ex equis desiliunt et pedibus proeli-
antur. 3. Vinum ad se omnino² importari non sin-
unt. 4. Cum propter inopiam navium transire non
possent, domum revertuntur. 5. Galli ne bellum
renovarent, Caesar ad exercitum proficiscitur. 6.
Legati de Sueborum injuriis queruntur. 7. Ubii
queruntur quod ex finibus ab Suebis expelluntur.
8. Equitatus hostes ad Rhenum sequitur. 9. Ad
eum legati revertuntur et magnopere orant ne long-
ius procedat. 10. Germani cum ad confluentem
Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, se in flumen praecipi-
taverunt. 11. Caesar cum in Britanniam proficisce-
retur Labienum in continenti reliquit ut portum
tueretur. 12. Caesar cum in Galliam proficisceretur
sex legiones conscribi jussit. 13. Quod ubi³ Caesar
comperit, exercitum Rhenum traduxit ut Sigambros
ulcisceretur. 14. Caesar Voluseno mandat ut ad se
celeriter revertatur.

¹imported. ²at all.

³Put *cum* for *ubi* and rewrite the clause in Latin.

Translate into Latin:

1. On account of the scarcity of corn the army
returns to the Province. 2. Caesar follows the Ger-
mans across the Rhine in order to protect the Ubii.
3. The Romans follow the Germans across the
Rhine. 4. The Aedui complain because their lands
are being devastated by the Romans. 5. When the
Germans were advancing to the Rhine Caesar sets
out from the camp. 6. On hearing that the Gauls

were again entering upon hostilities, Caesar sets out for the army. 7. The Gauls determined to attack the army in Caesar's absence. 8. Caesar ordered Labienus to follow him with the cavalry. 9. When setting out for Italy, Caesar ordered Labienus to keep the army in winter quarters. 10. Caesar says that he crossed the Rhine to take vengeance on the Sigambri. 11. Labienus feared that the enemy would pursue him across the river. 12. Labienus was afraid that the cavalry would not return. 13. The scout brought back word to Caesar that Crassus had arrived in Aquitania.

LESSON XL.

GENDER OF LATIN NOUNS.

1. In English, a noun is Masculine when it is the name of a male, Feminine when it is the name of a female, and Neuter when it is the name neither of a male nor of a female.

2. In Latin, names of males are Masculine, and names of females Feminine; but nouns which are Neuter in English may be Masculine, Feminine or Neuter in Latin.

It will therefore be necessary to learn the Latin Gender of nouns which are Neuter in English. The following are some rules:

(a) Nouns of the First Declension ending in *a* are Feminine, *e.g.*, *insula*, *praeda*.

(b) Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *us* or *er* are Masculine, *e.g.*, *murus*, *ager*.

(c) Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *um* are Neuter, e.g., *bellum*, *regnum*.

3. A Latin adjective agrees in Gender, Number and Case with the noun which it qualifies. In English we say "a great man," "a great goddess," "a great war." The adjective "great" does not change its form, but in Latin a great man is *magnus vir*, a great goddess is *magna dea*, and a great war is *magnum bellum*, *magnus* being the Masculine form of the adjective, *magna* the Feminine, and *magnum* the Neuter.

4. If the noun is Plural, the adjective also takes a Plural termination: thus, *magni muri*, great walls; *magnae insulae*, large islands; *magna regna*, great kingdoms.

5. The adjective must also be in the same case as the noun: thus, *ex magnis muris*, from the large walls; *ex magnis insulis*, from the large islands; *ex magno regno*, from the great kingdom.

6. The cases of the adjective are formed in the same way as the noun. An adjective ending in *us* is declined like a noun in *us*, an adjective ending in *a* like a noun in *a*, and an adjective in *um* like a noun in *um*: thus,

Singular

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>magnus</i>	<i>magna</i>	<i>magnum</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>magni</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magni</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>magno</i>	<i>magnae</i>	<i>magno</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>magnum</i>	<i>magnam</i>	<i>magnum</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>magno</i>	<i>magnā</i>	<i>magno</i>

Plural

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
magni	magnae	magna
magnorum	magnarum	magnorum
magnis	magnis	magnis
magnos	magnas	magna
magnis	magnis	magnis

7. The following is a list of Adjectives in the Nominative Singular of the three Genders:

multus, multa, multum, *much* or *many*
 maximus, maxima, maximum, *greatest*
 bellicosus, -a, -um, *warlike*
 longus, -a, -um, *long*
 privatus, -a, -um, *private*
 frigidus, -a, -um, *cold*
 firmus, -a, -um, *strong*
 importatus, -a, -um, *imported*
 decimus, -a, -um, *tenth*
 suus, -a, -um, *his, her, its, their*
 incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain*
 tertius, -a, -um, *third*
 altus, -a, -um, *high, deep*
 tantus, -a, -um, *so great*

VOCABULARY.

multitudo, multitudinis	<i>multitude</i>
latitudo, -inis	<i>width</i>
altitudo, -inis	<i>depth or height</i>
magnitudo, -inis	<i>greatness, size</i>
fortitudo, -inis	<i>bravery</i>
homo, -inis	<i>man</i>
pro (prep. gov. abl.)	<i>in proportion to</i>

Conjugation of Irregular Verb *ire*, *to go*.

<i>Indic.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i>	it (3rd pl. <i>eunt</i>)	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ivit</i>
		<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>ibat</i>		
<i>Subj.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>eat</i>		
		<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>iret</i>	<i>Plpf.</i>	<i>ivisset</i>
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>			<i>ire</i>	<i>Perf.</i>	<i>ivisse</i>

Compounds of *ire* are conjugated in the same way,
e.g.,

<i>redire, to go back</i>	<i>abire, to go away</i>
<i>transire, to go across</i>	<i>adire, to go to</i>
<i>inire, to go into</i>	

The letter "v" is often omitted in the Perfect Tenses of *ire*, and in the compounds the omission of "v" is the rule, e.g., *transiit, transiissem, transiisse*.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. *Equus est parvus.* 2. *Insula est parva.* 3. *Regnum est parvum.* 4. *Equi sunt parvi.* 5. *Insulae sunt parvae.* 6. *Multi Germani in magna insula sunt.* 7. *Multi incolae in insula sunt.* 8. *Tencteri ab Suebis multos annos premebantur.* 9. *Germani magno cum numero hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt.* 10. *Germani equis non importatis utuntur.* 11. *Multos annos Tencteri vim Sueborum sustinerunt.* 12. *Muri erant tanti ut¹ Caesar oppidum*

¹We have seen that *ut* with the Subjunctive Mood translates the idea of purpose. It also translates a result or consequence. In this sentence the consequence of the walls being so great was "that Caesar was not able to take the town by assault." Observe that the negative is expressed by *ut non*, instead of by *ne*.

expugnare non posset. 13. Germani trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverunt. 14. Romani multa Gallorum aedificia incenderunt. 15 Caesar dicit Gallos incertis rumoribus servire. 16. Pro multitudine hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se fines habere arbitrabantur.

Translate into Latin:

1. Britain is a large island. 2. Caesar took possession of many islands. 3. The Romans waged many wars. 4. They return to Caesar after the third day. 5. Caesar fortified his position with a strong garrison. 6. Labienus protected his camp with a deep trench. 7. At the third watch Caesar sets out for Britain. 8. At the third hour Caesar broke up² his camp. 9. The Gauls send many ambassadors to Caesar. 10. Caesar ordered the Gauls to return to their own lands. 11. The cavalry fought with great danger. 12. It happened that³ there was a full moon. 13. The Gauls had large forces of cavalry. 14. In Germany nobody has private property in land. 15. They think they are able to conquer a great number of states. 16. Saying this with a loud voice, he jumped overboard and began to carry the standard against the enemy.

²Say "moved."

³*accidit ut*, it happened that. If a negative were required here, would it be *ut non* or *ne*?

LESSON XLI.

GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

1. As in the First and Second Declensions, the names of males are Masculine and the names of females are Feminine. Thus, *eques*, a horseman, is Masculine, and *mulier*, a woman, is Feminine.

2. The following are some rules for the Latin Gender of Third Declension nouns which are Neuter in English:

(a) Nouns ending in *io*, *do*, *as* and *x* are Feminine.

(b) Nouns ending in *en*, and *us* (with the Genitive in *ris*) are Neuter: as *flumen*, *corpus* (Gen., *corporis*), *opus*, (Gen., *operis*).

3. In the previous exercise, when an adjective agreed with a noun, it had the same termination as the noun; but if the noun belongs to the Third Declension, the adjective will have a different termination; thus,

decima legio, the tenth legion

decimae legionis, of the tenth legion

rapidum flumen, swift river

rapidi fluminis, of a swift river

in rapidis fluminibus, in the swift rivers

Observe that in the above examples the termination of the adjective is different from that of the noun, but the adjective is nevertheless in the same Gender, Number, and Case as the noun. The reason why the adjectives have a different termination from the nouns given above is that the Feminine of the adjectives belongs to the First Declension, and the Masculine and

Neuter to the Second Declension, while the nouns belong to the Third Declension.

REVIEW OF DEPONENT VERBS.

<i>1st Conjugation.</i>		<i>2nd Conjugation.</i>	
<i>hortari</i> , to exhort.		<i>tueri</i> , to protect.	
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> hortatur { <i>Imperf.</i> hortabatur		tuetur tuebatur
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> hortetur { <i>Imperf.</i> hortaretur		tueatur tueretur
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i> hortari		tueri	
<i>3rd Conjugation</i>		<i>4th Conjugation</i>	
<i>proficisci</i> , to set out		<i>potiri</i> , to win (gov. abl.)	
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> proficiscitur { <i>Imperf.</i> proficiscebatur		potitur potiebatur
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> profiscatur { <i>Imperf.</i> profisceretur		potiaturn potiretur
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i> proficisci		potiri	

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar cum in Britanniam profisceretur multas naves aedificavit. 2. Britanni multum frumentum in silvis densis celabant. 3. Caesar multos¹ nautas ex Gallia convocavit, ut exercitum in Britanniam transportaret. 4. Germani sine mora trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverunt. 5. Suebi putant magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. 6. Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt. 7. Tencteri,

¹Explain how it is that *multos* agrees with *nautas*, although the terminations are different.

cum propter custodias Menapiorum Rhenum transire non possent, in suas regiones revertuntur.² 8. Caesar dixit se agros tantae multitudini dare non posse. 9. Explorator renuntiavit magnam partem Menapiorum Mosam transiisse. 10. Magna pars insulae a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur. 11. Caesar in aperto ac plano litore naves locat. 12. Caesar legatis mandavit³ ut in aperto ac plano litore naves locarent. 13. Milites Romani navibus⁴ onerariis longarum navium cursum adaequaverunt. 14. Explorator renuntiavit se magnas hostium copias in colle alto vidisse. 15. Flumen Tamesis fines⁵ Cassivellauni a maritimis civitatibus dividit. 16. In Britannia hominum est infinita multitudo pecorumque magnus numerus. 17. Britanni aere utuntur importato.⁶ 18. Caesar Volusenum cum navi⁷ longa praemisit ut insulam exploraret.

²Historic Present.

³*mandare*, to give instructions. ⁴Why Ablative?

⁵What is the Genitive Plural? What nouns have you had with the same Genitive Plural?

⁶*importato* is in an unusual position. To place a word in an unusual position gives emphasis to that word. In translating express your emphasis by whatever means you can. This sentence might be translated, "The bronze which the Britons use is imported."

⁷What nouns have *i* in the Ablative Singular?

Translate into Latin:

1. So great was the storm that the war-ships could not reach the island. 2. At the fourth hour Caesar was approaching⁸ Britain with his war-ships. 3. The Gauls concealed a great amount of arms in the

⁸*appropinquare*. Name all the verbs you know which govern the Dative.

town. 4. The scout brought back word that the Gauls were concealing arms in the town. 5. The scout brought back word that the Gauls had concealed a great amount of arms in the town. 6. The standard-bearer of the tenth legion jumped down from the ship and began to approach the enemy. 7. When the enemy saw that the Roman soldiers were approaching the shore, they were greatly alarmed (impf.). 8. There the Gauls await the arrival of the Roman soldiers. 9. Caesar orders Labienus to wait for him with the tenth legion in the territory of the Morini. 10. Caesar ordered Labienus to build many war-ships. 11. Meanwhile the Britons ordered their (men) to go back to (their) fields. 12. The storm was dashing⁹ the transports and the war-ships to pieces. 13. Owing to the lack of corn the Roman soldiers were unable to pass the winter in Britain. 14. Caesar therefore ordered the legions to be carried over to Gaul without delay. 15. Since a great part of the Britons kept coming into the camp every day, Caesar did not suspect treachery. 16. The Britons fight both with cavalry and with chariots. 17. They so place their chariots that they are able to retreat¹⁰ with great speed. 18. Meanwhile our soldiers fought bravely for four hours. 19. When Caesar had waited four hours in vain for the transports, he ordered the Gauls to send him corn at once.

⁹*affligere*. ¹⁰*se recipere* = to betake oneself back.

LESSON XLII.

THE SUPERLATIVE DEGREE.

1. The Superlative Degree of an adjective is formed by cutting off the termination of the Genitive and adding *issimus*: thus,

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Genitive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
altus, <i>high</i>	alt-i	altissimus, <i>highest</i>
latus, <i>broad</i>	lat-i	latissimus, <i>broadest</i>
bellicosus, <i>warlike</i>	bellicos-i	bellicosissimus, <i>most</i> [<i>warlike</i>]

2. The following are a few irregular Superlatives:

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
bonus, <i>good</i>	optimus, <i>best</i>
magnus, <i>great</i>	maximus, <i>greatest</i>
parvus, <i>small</i>	minimus, <i>least</i>
multus, <i>much or many</i>	plurimus, <i>most</i>

The Superlative is also used to give more emphasis than the Positive. Thus *altissimus* may mean very high, *optimus*, very good or excellent, etc., etc.

3. *Quam* with the Superlative expresses the greatest degree possible: thus, *quam plurimae naves*, as many ships as possible.

VOCABULARY.

gens, gentis (f.) <i>nation</i>	continere <i>to hold, keep, con-</i>
prohibere <i>to prevent</i>	<i>tain, bound</i>
cogere (pf., <i>coegit</i>) <i>to</i>	praemium <i>a recompense</i>
<i>compel</i>	praesidium <i>a guard</i>

Conjugation of Irregular Verb *ferre*, *to carry*
Active Voice

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> fert (pl., <i>ferunt</i>)	<i>Perf.</i> tulit
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> ferebat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> ferat	
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> ferret	<i>Plpf.</i> tulisset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	ferre	<i>Perf.</i> tulisse

Passive Voice

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> fertur (pl., <i>feruntur</i>)
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> ferebatur
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> feratur
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> ferretur
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	ferri

This verb is Third Conjugation, but observe:

(a) The vowel *i* is omitted in 3rd Singular Present Indicative.

(b) The vowel *e* is omitted between the two *r*'s of the Present Infinitive.

(c) The Imperfect Subjunctive is obtained as usual by adding *t* to the Present Infinitive.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Tencteri maxima cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt. 2. Rhenus est flumen altissimum et latissimum. 3. Sueborum gens est maxima et bellicosissima. 4. Putant magnum numerum civitatum suam vim sustinere non posse. 5. Interea ne propius (nearer) se castra moveret, rogarunt. 6. Caesarem orant¹ ut equites pugna prohibeat. 7. Germani plurimos vicos agrosque trans

Rhenum habebant. 8. Legatus servum monet ut epistolam ad senatum summa cum celeritate ferat. 9. Legati responderunt populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire. 10. Caesar naves quam plurimas aedificari jubet. 11. Caesar fabros quam plurimos ex continenti convocari jubebat. 12. Caesar verebatur ut equites ad insulam pervenirent. 13. Romani verebantur ne maxima pars Sueborum Rhenum transirent. 14. Tempore opportunissimo Caesar decimam legionem ad Labienum misit. 15. Labienus milites monuit¹ ut se in castris continerent.

¹What verbs are followed by *ut* or *ne* and the Subjunctive instead of the Infinitive, as in English?

Translate into Latin:

1. The Treveri have very large forces of infantry.
2. Caesar orders engineers to be summoned from Spain.
3. Indutiomarus is afraid that he will be deserted² by his friends.
4. Dumnorix was afraid of being deserted by his friends.
5. The Romans fear they will be compelled to pass³ the summer in the country of the Treveri.
6. The Romans were afraid they should be compelled to winter in Britain.
7. On account of the violence of the storm the smallest ships were not able to hold their course.
8. The Helvetii are hemmed in by the Rhine, a very broad and deep river which⁴ divides their territory from the Germans.
9. Having ordered as great a number of ships as possible to be built, Caesar hastened from Italy to the army.
10. By means of very large rewards Labienus induces the slaves to

²The Present Subjunctive expresses futurity in many constructions. ³*consumere*. ⁴*quod*.

cross over to the camp of the enemy. 11. The scout brought back word that the enemy were holding the position with a very strong garrison. 12. The Sequani beg the Helvetii not to debar them from the journey. 13. Ariovistus was in possession of Vesontio, the largest town of the Sequani.

LESSON XLIII.

THE SUPINE.

1. The Supine is one of the principal parts of the Latin Verb. It can translate the idea of purpose, which the Infinitive cannot do: as,

The boys came to see the sports. *Pueri ludos visum venerunt.*

2. In Lesson XI. the idea of purpose was translated by *ut* with the Subjunctive: as,

Caesar renews the war to get possession of the islands. *Caesar bellum renovat ut insulas occupet.*

N.B.—The Supine is used rather than *ut* with the Subjunctive when the principal verb is a verb of motion.

3. Learn the following Supines; and give the 3rd Singular and Plural of the Present Indicative of the verb to which each belongs:

questum, <i>to complain</i>	cognitum, <i>to learn</i>
frumentatum, <i>to forage</i>	arcessitum, <i>to summon</i>
obsessum, <i>to besiege</i>	rogatum, <i>to ask</i>
auditum, <i>to hear</i>	

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Aedui de finitimorum injuriis questum venerunt.
2. Caesar Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit

Britanniam exploratum. 3. Cum hostes non longe abessent, tertiam partem militum frumentatum emisit. 4. Caesar ad Italiam proficiscitur obsessum Romam. 5. Galli ad castra Romana legatos miserunt imperata Caesaris cognitum. 6. Treveri Germanos sollicitare dicebantur. 7. Caesar secum decimam legionem ducere constituit ut praesidium quam amicissimum haberet. 8. Galli nuntios trans Rhenum miserunt Germanos arcessitum. 9. Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium. 10. Hannibal equites ad castra Romana misit rem exploratum.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar sent a scout to explore the bank of the river. 2. The enemy approached the camp to examine the rampart and the ditch. 3. Labienus sent the tenth legion out to forage. 4. Caesar sent messengers to Italy to collect engineers. 5. The Britons came to the camp to hear Caesar's demands. 6. The messenger says that a very large army is being led across the Rhine. 7. He ordered the children of the chiefs to be brought to him. 8. The Helvetii send envoys to Caesar to ask him not to look upon them as enemies. 9. The Gauls came to lodge a complaint with Caesar¹ against the Germans for having crossed the Rhine and devastated their lands. 10. On learning that the enemy had not yet crossed the river, Caesar sent out a third² of his soldiers on a foraging expedition.

¹Reconstruct the sentence, "The Gauls came to Caesar," etc.

²Say, "a third part."

LESSON XLIV.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE PASSIVE.

1. The Perfect Participle Passive is formed from the Supine by changing *um* into *us*. It agrees, like an adjective, in Gender, Number, and Case with the noun which it qualifies.

2. The following are some Perfect Participles Passive, with their meaning:

comparatus, -a, -um,	<i>having been collected or procured</i>
factus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>done or made</i>
confectus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>completed</i>
interfectus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>killed</i>
vulneratus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>wounded</i>
cognitus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>known or learnt</i>
missus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>sent</i>
emissus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>sent out</i>
praemissus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>sent forward</i>
commissus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>joined or begun (in reference to battle)</i>
relictus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>left</i>
expositus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>placed outside of</i>
pulsus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>driven</i>
repulsus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>driven back</i>
expulsus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>driven out</i>
repertus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>found</i>
acceptus, -a, -um,	“ “ <i>received</i>

N. B.—The Perfect Participle Passive may be rendered “being collected,” “being done,” “being completed,” etc., or more simply still, “collected,”

“done,” “completed.” The last form is that usually given as the third principal part of the verb in English grammar.

3. If a noun is used along with the Perfect Participle Passive, and if that noun is not the subject or object of a verb, or the objective after a preposition, then both the noun and the participle stand in the Ablative Case: thus,

The plan having been discovered, Caesar hastened into Gaul. *Cognito consilio Caesar in Galliam contendit.*

Here the noun “plan” is not the subject or object of a verb, nor is it objective after a preposition, and the participle “having been discovered” is used in close connection with it. Both noun and participle are in the Ablative Case in Latin. This construction is called the Ablative Absolute.

VOCABULARY.

in icere	<i>to throw into, cast upon</i>
e icere	<i>to throw out</i>
per pauci, -ae, -a	<i>very few</i>
con juratio (f.)	<i>league, conspiracy</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Comparato frumento Caesar Rhenum transiit.
2. Facto proelio Germani ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt.
3. Germanico bello confecto Caesar Rhenum transire statuit.
4. Germani post tergum clamore audito se ex castris ejecerunt.
5. Magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt.
6. Milites nostri, perpaucis vulneratis, se in castra receperunt.
7. Interim consilio Caesaris

cognito, legati a multis Britanniae civitatibus ad eum veniunt. 8. Conjuratiōe facta, Britanni paulatim ex castris discedere coeperunt. 9. Commisso proelio nostrorum militum impetum hostes sustinere non potuerunt. 10. Laudatis militibus, legatos ad portum Itium convenire jubet. 11. Navibus ad Britannicum bellum comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire jussit. 12. Labieno in continenti relicto ut portum tueretur, Caesar ipse ad Britanniam proficiscitur. 13. Caesar expositis militibus de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit. 14. Hostes ab equitibus repulsi se in silvas¹ abdiderunt. 15. Munito loco, Caesar custodias pro castris ponit. 16. Castris vallo fossaque munitis Caesar custodias in moenibus disponit.

¹The enemy were not *in* the woods; they went *into* the woods to hide, hence *silvas* is in Acc.

Translate into Latin, using the Ablative Absolute wherever possible:

1. After the battle was begun² the enemy beat a retreat. 2. Leaving the tenth legion³ on the continent, Caesar sets out for Britain. 3. Having found a suitable place for a camp Caesar hastened against the enemy at the third watch. 4. On defeating the enemy Caesar led his army back to the sea without delay. 5. Having summoned the engineers he began to fortify the camp. 6. Having fortified his position Caesar sent out the cavalry. 7. Having explored the woods the cavalry brought back word

²Turn the clause thus, "The battle having been begun."

³Turn into, "The tenth legion being left."

that the enemy had departed. 8. On learning the plan of the Britons Caesar led his army into the territory of Cassivellaunus. 9. Having sent forward the cavalry Caesar ordered the legions to follow immediately. 10. After his territory had been devastated Cassivellaunus sent ambassadors to Caesar. 11. Caesar orders Cassivellaunus to send him hostages. 12. When he had received the hostages⁴ Caesar led his army back to the sea. 13. Seizing the ships of the Menapii the Germans crossed the Rhine. 14. Having taken the town by assault Caesar put the senate to the sword. 15. The Tencteri,⁵ being driven out of their territory by the Suebi, crossed the Rhine with a great multitude of men. 16. Exasperated by the obstinate defence the Romans spared neither age⁶ nor sex in the conquered town.

⁴“Hostages being received.”

⁵Can the Abl. Abs. be used here? Absolute means independent. “Tencteri” is not grammatically independent. It is the subject of the verb “crossed.” ⁶Mind the sense.

LESSON XLV.

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE (*continued*).

1. In the previous exercise it should be noticed that the participle in the Ablative Absolute was always Passive Voice. When the English was given in the Active, the phrase had always to be turned into the Passive before translating it into Latin. Thus in the third sentence of the last exercise, “having found a

suitable place" was turned into "a suitable place having been found." It should now be observed that if the verb is intransitive it will be impossible to turn the participle into the Passive. Thus in the sentence, "Having come to the territory of the enemy, Caesar pitched his camp," the clause "having come to the territory of the enemy" cannot be turned into the Passive, because there is no Passive for the verb "to come," which is intransitive. It will, therefore, be impossible to translate "having come to the territory of the enemy" by the Ablative Absolute construction. Say, therefore:

When he had come to the territory of the enemy, Caesar pitched his camp. *Caesar cum ad hostium fines venisset castra posuit.*

REVIEW OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

Ripa, *bank* (of river)

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ripa	ripae
<i>Gen.</i> ripae	riparum
<i>Dat.</i> ripae	ripis
<i>Acc.</i> ripam	ripas
<i>Abl.</i> ripa	ripis

Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine except names of males, which are, of course, Masculine.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Caesar, cum suos urgeri vidisset, in primam aciem processit.
2. Caesar ubi suos urgeri vidit, manipulos laxare jussit.
3. Caesar, ubi suos urgeri

vidit, in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit. 4. Caesar, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis milites esse confertos vidit, in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit ut gladiis uti possent. 5. Caesar, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis milites duodecimae legionis esse confertos vidit, quartae cohortis centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, et ubi rem esse in angusto vidit, in primam aciem processit, centurionibusque nominatim appellatis, signa inferre et manipulos laxare jussit ut gladiis uti possent.

Translate into Latin:

1. On coming to the army Caesar heard that the Gauls had formed a league against the Roman people. 2. Having placed a garrison there he hastened into Germany. 3. Having determined to wage war with the Germans, Caesar crossed the Rhine. 4. That year the Tencteri, having been driven out of their lands by the Suebi, crossed the river Rhine with a mighty host of men. 5. When Caesar learned that the Germans had crossed the Rhine, he led his army into Gaul by forced (*magnus*) marches. 6. On hearing that Caesar was coming, the Germans immediately sent ambassadors to him. 7. On arriving there Caesar discovered that twenty men-of-war had been built and that all preparations had been made for the British war. 8. The Romans attempted to make a road through the forest with the axe.¹

¹By cutting down the trees. Abl. Abs.

LESSON XLVI.

THE PERFECT PARTICIPLE OF DEPONENT VERBS.

1. Since Deponent verbs have a Passive form but an Active meaning, observe that the following Perfect Participles, being from Deponent verbs, have an Active meaning:

nactus, *having obtained*
 hortatus, *having exhorted*
 cohortatus, *having exhorted*
 conatus, *having attempted*
 progressus, *having advanced*
 secutus, *having followed*
 veritus, *having feared*
 arbitratus, *having thought*

Having exhorted the soldiers, Caesar crossed the river. *Cohortatus milites, Caesar flumen transiit.*

Here the English is exactly the same as the Latin and need not be turned. It must be remembered, however, that this is the case only with deponent verbs. If the verb to exhort were not deponent, the phrase "having exhorted the soldiers" would have to be changed into "the soldiers having been exhorted."

REVIEW OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

Ventus, *wind*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> ventus	venti
<i>Gen.</i> venti	ventorum
<i>Dat.</i> vento	ventis
<i>Acc.</i> ventum	ventos
<i>Abl.</i> vento	ventis

Ager, a field

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ager</i>	<i>ager</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>agri</i>	<i>agrorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>agro</i>	<i>agris</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>agrum</i>	<i>agros</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>agro</i>	<i>agris</i>

Proelium, battle

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>proelium</i>	<i>proelia</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>proeli</i>	<i>proeliorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>proelio</i>	<i>proeliis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>proelium</i>	<i>proelia</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>proelio</i>	<i>proeliis</i>

Nouns ending in *us* and *er* of the Second Declension are Masculine, those in *um* are Neuter.

N. B.—Neuter nouns are always the same in the Nominative and Accusative, and in the Plural these Cases end in *a*.

VOCABULARY.

idoneus, -a, -um	<i>suitable</i>	primus, -a, -um	<i>first (of more than two)</i>
dicere	<i>to say</i>		
tempestas	<i>weather</i>	lux, lucis	<i>light</i>
conscendere	<i>to climb</i>	noctu	<i>by night</i>
commutatio	<i>change</i>	officium	<i>duty</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Germani dicunt se venisse invitos, ejectos domo.
2. Caesar idoneum esse arbitratus¹ Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit.
3. Hostes proelio superati statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt.
- 4.

¹The two Perfect Participles *veritus* and *arbitratus* are best translated by the English Present Participles “fearing” and “thinking.”

Caesar perfidiam barbarorum suspicatus statim decimam legionem secum proficisci jussit. 5. Caesar idoneam tempestatem nactus ad Britanniam proficiscitur. 6. Veritus¹ ne a principibus civitatis desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit. 7. Tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves jubet. 8. Tum venti commutationem secutus ad oram Britanniae prima luce pervenit. 9. Britanni ad flumen progressi proelium committere coeperunt. 10. Commisso proelio hostes impetum nostrorum sustinere non potuerunt. 11. Cohortatus milites ut fortiter pugnarent Caesar in primam aciem processit. 12. Conati noctu flumen transire et a custodiis Menapiorum repulsi, domum redierunt. 13. Germani ad Rhenum progressi transire noctu conantur.

¹See note on previous page.

Translate into Latin:

1. Leaving a strong guard on the banks of the river Caesar hastened into the territory of the Sigambri. 2. Meeting with suitable weather Caesar resolved to cross over to Britain at once. 3. Advancing from the woods the Britons began to attack the Roman camp. 4. Having exhorted the legions to fight bravely the generals gave the signal for battle.² 5. Having given the signal for battle Caesar went forward to the van. 6. Fearing lest the Gauls would renew the war Caesar hastened from Italy. 7. Fearing that Labienus was not able to defend the camp Caesar sets out for the army. 8. When he

²Genitive Case. Why?

arrived there³ he summoned the chiefs of Gaul. 9. Having exhorted the chiefs of Gaul to remain in their allegiance⁴ he returned to Italy. 10. Having fortified the camp with a rampart and a ditch, Caesar set out against the Morini.

³*eo* = there, when there is motion to; *ibi* = there, when there is no motion. ⁴*officium*.

LESSON XLVII.

THE FUTURE INFINITIVE ACTIVE.

1. The Future Infinitive Active is formed from the Supine by changing *um* into *urus* and adding *esse*, which is the Present Infinitive of the verb "to be."

The following are some examples:

nuntiaturus esse, *will or would announce*
 processurus esse, *will or would advance*
 reversurus esse, *will or would return*
 transiturus esse, *will or would cross*
 venturus esse, *will or would come*
 permissurus esse, *will or would entrust*
 futurus esse, *will or would be*
 neglecturus esse, *will or would neglect*

2. The Future Infinitive is used in the Accusative and the Infinitive construction whenever a future meaning is required. Thus:

Legati dixerunt se Caesari obsides duros esse.
 The ambassadors said that they would give hostages to Caesar.

Observe that the termination *us* must be changed to agree with the subject *se*, which in this case is Accusative Plural.

REVIEW OF THIRD DECLENSION.

Pars, *a part*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> pars	partes
<i>Gen.</i> partis	partium
<i>Dat.</i> parti	partibus
<i>Acc.</i> partem	partes
<i>Abl.</i> parte	partibus

Nouns of one syllable ending in *s* or *x* preceded by consonant have *ium* in the Genitive Plural.

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Legati rem se suis nuntiaturus esse dixerunt.
2. Caesar se longius processurum esse negavit.
3. Legati dixerunt se post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros¹.
4. Mercatores Cassivellauno nuntiaverunt Caesarem in Britanniam esse transiturum.
5. Hostes suspicati nostros huc esse venturos in silvis constiterunt.
6. Indutiomarus dixit se ad eum in castra esse venturum.
7. Indutiomarus dicit se suas fortunas Caesari permissurum.
8. Britanni pollicentur se obsides ad Caesarem missuros.
9. Bello Helvetiorum confecto Galliae principes ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt.
10. Caesar sperabat se ad oram Britanniae ante primam lucem perventurum.

¹*Esse* is often omitted.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar hopes to reach² the river before night.
2. Ariovistus promises to return after the third day.

²“To reach,” though present tense, has a future meaning, therefore the Future Infinitive must be used in Latin. All such sentences should be turned thus: Caesar hopes that he will reach the river before night. The construction is the Accusative and the Infinitive, and the Accusative of the pronoun must be expressed. Verbs signifying to hope, promise, undertake, swear and threaten are followed by the Accusative and the Future Infinitive when futurity is implied.

3. Hannibal swears to be always an enemy to the Roman people. 4. Hannibal swore to be an enemy to the Roman people as long as he lived. 5. Ariovistus answered that he would come to Caesar with one hundred hostages. 6. Caesar answered that he would not overlook the injuries of the Aedui. 7. The messenger promises to announce the matter to Labienus. 8. The Gauls said that they would entrust their wives and children to Caesar. 9. So great was the number of the enemy that Caesar was not able to storm the town. 10. The enemy sent reinforcements that Caesar might not take the town by storm.

LESSON XLVIII.

THE PRINCIPAL PARTS OF THE LATIN VERB.

The principal parts of the Latin verb are the Present Indicative, the Present Infinitive, the Perfect Indicative and the Supine. They are called the principal parts because all other parts of the verb are formed from them.

Examine the following:

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>1st Conj.</i>	laudo	laudare	laudavi	laudatum
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	moneo	monēre	monui	monitum
<i>3rd Conj.</i>	duco	ducēre	duxi	ductum
<i>4th Conj.</i>	munio	munire	munivi	munitum

The Conjugation of the verb is determined by the ending of the Present Infinitive: thus,

First Conjugation ends in *are*.

Second Conjugation ends *ēre* (the *e* before *re* is long).

Third Conjugation ends in *ere* (the *e* before *re* is short).

Fourth Conjugation ends in *ire*.

The Second Conjugation is also distinguished from the Third by the fact that in the Second Conjugation the *o* is preceded by *e*.

In giving the principal parts the Present and Perfect Indicative are always in the First Person. See any verb in your vocabulary.

TABLE OF TENSES AND MOODS.

ACTIVE VOICE.

	laudo, laudare	laudavi	laudatum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> laudat	<i>Perf.</i> laudavit	
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> laudabat		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> laudet	<i>Plpf.</i> laudavisset	
	{ <i>Imperf.</i> laudaret		
<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> laudare	<i>Pf.</i> laudavisse	<i>Fut.</i> laudaturus esse

The Tenses are arranged underneath the principal part from which they are formed. The student should now make out the table of the other three conjugations, taking *moneo*, *duco* and *munio* as examples.

VOCABULARY.

pello, pellere, pepuli, pulsum	<i>to drive</i>
expello, expellere, expuli, expulsum	<i>to drive out</i>
mitto, mittere, misi, missum	<i>to send</i>
praemitto, praemittere, etc.	<i>to send ahead</i>
emitto, emittere, etc.	<i>to send out</i>
dimitto, dimittere, etc.	<i>to send away</i>
committo, committere, etc.	<i>to join (battle)</i>
iter, itineris (N.)	<i>march, journey, road</i>

Translate into English:

1. Ea hieme Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri, agris ab Suebis expulsi, magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo¹ Rhenus influit. Quod² cum Caesar cognovisset, magnis itineribus in Galliam exercitum duxit. Germani eius³ adventu⁴ subito perterriti statim ad eum legatos de pace miserunt.

¹*quo*, where. ²Which. ³*eius*, of him, or his.

⁴*adventu*, Ablative Singular of *adventus*, which is a noun of the Fourth Declension.

Translate into Latin:

1. That year the Suebi, the most warlike nation in Germany, drove the Usipetes out of their lands. Fearing that they would cross the Rhine; Caesar at once led his army from Italy into Gaul. On arriving there¹ he discovered that they had already reached the bank of the river and were attempting to cross. To prevent their accomplishing this² he sent forward the cavalry without delay to attack³ them (as they were⁴) encumbered⁵ in the water.

¹Put this word first.

²Say which (*quod*). Put this word first. Latin begins a new sentence with a word that carries the mind back to the previous sentence. "This," or better "which," refers to the attempt to cross the Rhine.

³Use the Supine.

⁴Omit.

⁵*impeditus*.

LESSON XLIX.

THE PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE.

The Perfect Indicative Passive is formed by adding *est* for the Singular and *sunt* for the Plural to the Perfect Participle Passive.

Learn by heart the following Perfects Indicative Passive:

Singular

Plural

necatus est, *he was killed* necati sunt, *they were killed*

occisus est, *he was killed* occisi sunt, *they were killed*

missus est, *he was sent*

dimissus est, *he was sent away*

praemissus est, *he was sent forward*

ductus est, *he was led*

traductus est, *he was led across*

expulsus est, *he was driven out*

The termination of the Perfect Participle must be changed to agree with the subject.

The queen was killed. *Regina necata est.*

The queens were killed. *Reginae necatae sunt.*

Table of the Passive of *laudare*.

laudor (1st pers.) laudari		laudatus sum (<i>sum</i> is the 1st pers. of <i>est</i>)
<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> laudatur	<i>Perf.</i> laudatus est
	<i>Imperf.</i> laudabatur	
<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> laudetur	
	<i>Imperf.</i> laudaretur	<i>Plpf.</i> laudatus esset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i> laudari		<i>Perf.</i> laudatus esse

Translate into English:

1. Hostes, abjectis armis, terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus. 2. Itaque dies circiter viginti in eo loco commoratus est,¹ quod Corus ventus navigationem impediabat. 3. Legati a multis Galliae civitatibus ad Caesarem de pace missi sunt. 4. Opere effecto, exercitus Rhenum traductus est. 5. Decima legio sine mora emissa est. 6. Consilia hostium ab exploratoribus cognita sunt. 7. Teneteri ab Suebis agris expulsi sunt. 8. Ea hieme multae naves longae ab Romanis aedificatae sunt. 9. Commius Atrebas a Caesare in Britanniam praemissus est. 10. Dicunt Commium a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum² esse. 11. Tanta tempestas subito coorta est (arose) ut naves cursum tenere non possent. 12. Germani celeritate Caesaris adventus³ perterriti statim ad eum legatos de pace miserunt. His⁴ Caesar imperavit ut statim in Germaniam reverterentur et in Ubiorum finibus con-

¹This is a Deponent verb (*commorari*, to delay). and therefore, though Passive in form, it is active in meaning.

²To form the Perfect Infinitive Passive put *esse* for *est* of the Perfect Indicative.

³Genitive Case of *adventus*.

⁴These. Observe that this word is placed first as it carries the mind back to the Germans in the previous sentence.

siderent. Haec⁵ legati suis renuntiaverunt. Interea⁶ Caesar, cum vereretur ut Germani imperata sua facerent, bellum parare coepit.

⁵These things. This word is placed first because it refers to the things commanded by Caesar in the previous sentence.

⁶*interea* is placed first because it too carries the mind back to the previous sentence. *interea* = meanwhile, that is, while the ambassadors were away announcing Caesar's orders to their compatriots.

Translate into Latin:

1. The Britons were frightened by the shape of the Roman ships. 2. The tenth legion was sent out to forage (supine). 3. Our cavalry was thrown into confusion by the Gallic horse. 4. The legions were taken across into Britain without their baggage. 5. The scout brought back word that our cavalry had been thrown into confusion by the Gallic horse. 6. The scouts brought back word that our cavalry had been thrown into confusion by the Gallic horse and had fled. 7. Envoys sent by the enemy came to Caesar to treat for peace. 8. Caesar exhorted (pf.) the soldiers to fight bravely. 9. The soldiers were exhorted¹ by Caesar to sustain the attack of the enemy. 10. On the completion of the German war (abl. absol.) Caesar returned to Italy. 11. Having sent the cavalry ahead to prevent² the Germans from crossing,³ Caesar hastened with all his forces to the bank of the river. Alarmed by his sudden arrival, the Germans⁴ burnt⁵ their ships and fled to their own territory. They then⁶ began to devastate their fields, that the Roman army, through lack of corn, might not be able to remain.

¹Remember that *cohortor* is a Deponent verb and is not Passive in meaning. ²*prohibeo*. ³Say, "to cross."

⁴Begin the sentence with this word to show connection with previous sentence.

⁵Instead of two co-ordinate verbs, "burnt" and "fled," Latin prefers to have only one main verb. Say, therefore, "their ships having been burnt, fled."

⁶Instead of saying "then," be more explicit and say, "when they arrived there." This will give you the word *there* with which to begin the sentence, and thus show the connection.

LESSON L.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

The Third Declension adjective takes the same termination as the noun of the Third Declension except that the Ablative Singular is usually *i* (instead of *e*) and the Genitive Plural *ium* (instead of *um*).

Omnis (all) is thus declined:

<i>Singular</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> omnis	omnis	omne
<i>Gen.</i> omnis	omnis	omnis
<i>Dat.</i> omni	omni	omni
<i>Acc.</i> omnem	omnem	omne
<i>Abl.</i> omni	omni	omni
<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> omnes	omnes	omnia
<i>Gen.</i> omnium	omnium	omnium
<i>Dat.</i> omnibus	omnibus	omnibus
<i>Acc.</i> omnes	omnes	omnia
<i>Abl.</i> omnibus	omnibus	omnibus

TABLE OF SECOND CONJUGATION VERB.

Moneo, I advise

ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ moneo	monere	monui	monitum
	{ <i>Impf.</i> monebat	<i>Plpf.</i> monuerat		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> moneat			
	{ <i>Impf.</i> moneret	<i>Plpf.</i> monuisset		
<i>Infinitive</i>	<i>Pres.</i> monere		<i>Perf.</i> monuisse	<i>Fut.</i> mon- [iturus esse

PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> monetur	<i>Perf.</i> monitus est
	<i>Impf.</i> monebatur	<i>Plpf.</i> monitus erat
<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> moneatur	
	<i>Impf.</i> moneretur	<i>Plpf.</i> monitus esset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i> moneri		<i>Perf.</i> monitus, esse

Observe the new Tenses: *monuerat*, he had advised; Passive, *monitus erat*, he had been advised.

VOCABULARY.

venio, venire, veni, ventum	<i>to come</i>
pervenio, pervenire, -veni, -ventum	<i>to arrive</i>
convenio, convenire, etc.	<i>to come together</i>
invenio, invenire, etc.	<i>to come upon, find</i>

Translate into English:

1. Caesar in proelium sine scuto venerat. 2. Menapii sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. 3. Germani in fines Condrusiorum pervenerant. 4. Hostes castra vallo fossaque munierant. 5. Tencteri post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperant. 6. Caesar milites monuerat ut fortiter pugnarent. 7. Sugambri finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant, seque in silvas abdiderant. 8. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur. 9. Tencteri flumen transierunt atque, omnibus Menapiorum aedificiis occupatis, reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt. 10. Caesar cum vereretur ne Germani bellum renovarent statim equites praemisit. Hi¹ millia quattuor passuum² progressi, cum hostes in collibus instructos conspexissent, statim

¹"These," referring to *equites*, thus showing connection with previous sentence

²Genitive plural of *passus*, pace. Four thousands of paces = four miles.

constiterunt. Illi³ nostros esse perterritos arbitrati⁴ impetum celeriter fecerunt eosque perturbaverunt.

³“Those” or “they,” referring to the enemy, and showing connection with previous sentence.

⁴*veritus* and *arbitratus* are best translated by the Present Participle in English.

Translate into Latin:

1. On account of the departure of the Germans, the Menapii had moved back to their own villages. 2. The Germans had crossed the Rhine not far from the sea. 3. Caesar had warned the Germans not to cross into Gaul. 4. On account of the lack of corn Caesar had ended the war. 5. Because the winter was at hand the Romans had brought the war to a close. 6. Caesar had crossed the Rhine to help the Ubii. 7. Caesar had led his army across the Rhine for the purpose of overawing the Germans. 8. Caesar had waited five hours for the war-ships. 9. So great had been the storm that the ships could not hold their course. 10. Seventy-four¹ of² our cavalry are killed in that battle.³ Piso Aquitanus, a man of aristocratic birth,⁴ whose⁵ grandfather had held the chief power in his own state, was among the slain.⁶

¹Put “seventy-four” at the end of the sentence, so as to have it near Piso Aquitanus, who was one of the seventy-four. ²*ex*.

³Put “in that battle” at the beginning, in order to show the connection with what went before. A battle has just been described.

⁴*vir generosus*. ⁵*cuius*, Genitive case of the relative pronoun.

⁶For “among the slain” simply say “in his,” and place this phrase immediately after “seventy-four.”

LESSON LI.

ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION (*continued*).

1. All Present Participles are declined like adjectives of the Third Declension.

Pugnans, *fighting**Singular*

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> pugnans	pugnans	pugnans
<i>Gen.</i> pugnantis	pugnantis	pugnantis
<i>Dat.</i> pugnanti	pugnanti	pugnanti
<i>Acc.</i> pignantem	pignantem	pugnans
<i>Abl.</i> pugnante (i)	pugnante (i)	pugnante (i)

Plural

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> pugnantes	pugnantes	pugnantia
<i>Gen.</i> pugnantium	pugnantium	pugnantium
<i>Dat.</i> pugnantibus	pugnantibus	pugnantibus
<i>Acc.</i> pugnantes	pugnantes	pugnantia
<i>Abl.</i> pugnantibus	pugnantibus	pugnantibus

2. The endings for the Present Participle of the four Conjugations are shown in the following list:

<i>First Conjugation</i>	pugnans, <i>fighting</i>
<i>Second Conjugation</i>	prohibens, <i>preventing</i>
<i>Third Conjugation</i>	petens, <i>seeking</i>
<i>Fourth Conjugation</i>	veniens, <i>coming</i>

N. B.—The Present Participle expresses the same time as the main verb, *e.g.*,

Fortissime pugnans interfectus est. He was killed while fighting very bravely.

Here the Present Participle refers to the past because the main verb refers to the past.

VOCABULARY.

transiens	<i>crossing</i>	conans	<i>attempting</i>
stans	<i>standing</i>	decurrens	<i>running down</i>
discedens	<i>departing</i>	ducens	<i>leading</i>
facio, facere, feci, factum			<i>to do, make</i>
interficio, interficere, interfeci, interfectum			<i>to kill</i>
conficio, conficere, confeci, confectum			<i>to complete</i>
cedo, cedere, cessi, cessum			<i>to retreat, yield</i>
procedo, procedere, processi, processum			<i>to go forward</i>
discedo, discedere, discessi, discessum			<i>to go away</i>
accedo, accedere, accessi, accessum			<i>to go to, ap- [proach</i>

TABLE OF THIRD CONJUGATION VERB.

Duco, *I lead*

ACTIVE VOICE.

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>duco</i>	<i>ducere</i>	<i>duxi</i>	<i>ductum</i>
	{ <i>Impf. ducebat</i>	<i>Plpf. duxerat</i>		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres. ducat</i>			
	{ <i>Impf. duceret</i>	<i>Plpf. duxisset</i>		
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>ducere</i>		<i>Perf. duxisse</i>	<i>Fut. ductu-</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>ducens</i>			<i>[rus esse</i>

PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres. ducitur (pl., ducun-</i>	<i>Pf. ductus est</i>
	{ <i>Impf. ducebatur tur)</i>	<i>Plpf. ductus erat</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres. ducatur</i>	
	{ <i>Impf. duceretur</i>	<i>Plpf. ductus esset</i>
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>duci</i>	<i>Pf. ductus esse</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		<i>Pf. ductus, -a, -um</i>

Translate into English:

1. Caesar hostes flumen transeuntes¹ aggressus est.
2. Piso Aquitanus, vir generosus, pro castris pugnans interfectus est.
3. Nullo² hoste prohibente

¹The Present Participles *iens* (going) and *transiens* (going across) change their spelling to *euntis* and *transeuntis*.

²The Ablative Absolute may be used with the Present Participle as well as with the Perfect Participle Passive.

Caesar flumen transiit. 4. Caesar ab hibernis in Italiam discedens legatis imperavit ut naves aedificarent. 5. Nostri Gallos audacissime flumen transire conantes multitudine telorum reppulerunt. 6. Interea³ Germani Caesarem nondum perfidiam suam audiisse arbitrati ad eum in castra postridie omnibus cum principibus venerunt. Hos⁴ cum sine mora comprehendi jussisset, Caesar omnes copias castris eduxit, equitatumque quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi jussit.

³Just before this the Germans had treacherously attacked a detachment of Caesar's army during a truce.

⁴"These," Accusative Plural Masc. of the demonstrative *hic, haec, hoc*. It refers back to *principibus*, and is placed first to show connection between the two sentences.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar, fearing a rebellion¹ (on the part) of the Gauls, hastened from Italy with all his forces. 2. Standing on the walls, the women and children begged Caesar for peace. 3. Caesar passed through the province without hindrance from the enemy.² 4. Caesar attacked the Gauls (as they were) running down from the mountain into the valley. 5. The Gauls attacked Caesar (as he was) leading his men out of the woods. 6. When the German war was ended,³ the Tencteri fled across the Rhine into the territory of the Sugambri and settled there. On learning this⁴ Caesar made up his mind to cross the Rhine.

¹*defectio, -onis*.

²Translate "without hindrance from the enemy" by means of the Abl. Abs. ³Abl. Abs.

⁴Say, "when he learned which" (*quod*), and begin the sentence with *quod* to show the connection with the previous sentence.

LESSON LII.

THE GERUND

The Gerund is formed from the Present Participle by changing *s* into *di*: thus,

<i>Present Part.</i>	<i>Gerund</i>
1st Conj. conjurans	conjurandi
2nd Conj. manens	manendi
3rd Conj. mittens	mittendi
4th Conj. muniens	muniendi

The Gerund is a verbal noun equal to the English verbal noun in *ing*. It has no Nominative and no Plural and is declined according to the Second Declension: thus,

<i>Nom.</i>	(wanting)
<i>Gen.</i>	conjurandi
<i>Dat.</i>	conjurando
<i>Acc.</i>	conjurandum
<i>Abl.</i>	conjurando

The Gerund translates the English verbal noun in *ing* when the latter is the object of a preposition: thus,

The reason of conspiring was this. *Causa conjurandi fuit haec.*

By conspiring the Gauls defeated the Romans. *Conjurando Galli Romanos superaverunt.*

TABLE OF FOURTH CONJUGATION VERB.

Munio, I fortify

	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Pf. Indic.</i>	<i>Supine</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ munit	munire	munivit	munitum
	{ <i>Impf.</i>	muniebat	<i>Plpf.</i> muniverat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>	muniat	<i>Perf.</i> muniverit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i>	muniret	<i>Plpf.</i> munivisset	
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		munire	<i>Pf.</i> munivisse	
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		muniens		
<i>Gerundive</i>		muniendi		

PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> munitur	<i>Pf.</i> munitus est
	<i>Impf.</i> munitur	<i>Plpf.</i> munitus erat
<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> muniatur	<i>Pf.</i> munitus sit
	<i>Impf.</i> muniretur	<i>Plpf.</i> munitus esset
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	munire	<i>Pf.</i> munitus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		<i>Pf.</i> munitus, -a, -um

VOCABULARY.

duco, ducere, duxi, ductum	<i>to lead</i>
produco, producere, produxi, productum	<i>to lead forth</i>
educo, educere, eduxi, eductum	<i>to lead out</i>
traduco, traducere, traduxi, traductum	<i>to lead across</i>
reduco, reducere, reduxi, reductum	<i>to lead back</i>
induco, inducere, induxi, inductum	<i>to lead on</i>

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Suebi centum milia armatorum bellandi causa¹ ex finibus quotannis educunt.
2. Magna pars equitatus praedandi causa Mosam transierat.
3. Tempestas erat idonea² ad navigandum.
4. Classis erat parata² ad navigandum.
5. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Remi legatos de pace ad Caesarem miserunt.
6. Hostes, ubi nostros in locum iniquum pugnandi causa non progredi viderunt, domum redire constituerunt.
7. Summa erat difficultas navigandi.
8. Spes praedandi studiumque bellandi Gallos ab agricultura revocabant.
9. Quotidie Sabinus, productis copiis, pugnandi potestatem fecit.
10. Ad celeritatem onerandi naves facit humiles.
11. Equites hostium acriter pugnaverunt tamen ut³

¹For the purpose of; used as a preposition and governing the Genitive, and when so used always follows the word which it governs.

²*idoneus ad* = suitable for. *paratus ad* = prepared for.

³*ut* here introduces a result. The clause might be translated—"nevertheless the result was that our men had the best of it in every part of the field."

nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint.⁴ 12. Ea,⁵ quae secuta est, hieme Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt, non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi⁶ fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur, et agri cultura prohibebantur.

⁴See new tense in the table.

⁵Notice that Caesar begins with "in that winter which followed," because the word "followed" carries the mind back to the events previously related, thus indicating the connection as usual.

⁶*transeundi* is the connecting word here. The connecting word is not always the very first word. As long as it is embodied in the first phrase, the connection is sufficiently clear.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar gave the captives an opportunity of departing. 2. Caesar set out from Italy with all his forces for the purpose of waging war.¹ 3. Caesar said that the Gauls were desirous² of making war. 4. Labienus sent word to Caesar that the ships were ready for sailing. 5. The cavalry of the enemy fought so (tam) fiercely that they threw³ (pf.) our men into confusion. 6. Caesar said that he would take⁴ a day for deliberating. 7. When Caesar was setting out for Italy, he sent Servius Galba into the territory of the Veragri with the tenth legion and part of the cavalry. The reason⁵ for sending⁶ him (eum) was this (haec).

¹*bellare*. ²*cupidus* (governs the Genitive).

³In a clause of result, if a decisive, vigorous or instantaneous act is described, the Perfect Subjunctive may be used instead of the Imperfect.

⁴*sumere*. ⁵What is your connecting word here?

⁶Use the Genitive case. Why?

LESSON LIII.

THE GERUNDIVE.

1. The Gerundive is a verbal adjective and is formed from the Gerund by changing the termination into *us* for the Masculine, *a* for the Feminine, *um* for the Neuter. Thus from the Gerund *muniendi* is formed the Gerundive *muniendus*, which is declined as follows:

<i>Singular</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	muniendus	munienda	muniendum
<i>Gen.</i>	muniendi	muniendae	muniendi
<i>Dat.</i>	muniendo	muniendae	muniendo
<i>Acc.</i>	muniendum	muniendam	muniendum
<i>Abl.</i>	muniendo	munienda	muniendo
.			
<i>Plural</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	muniendi	muniendae	munienda
<i>Gen.</i>	muniendorum	muniendarum	muniendorum
<i>Dat.</i>	muniendis	muniendis	muniendis
<i>Acc.</i>	muniendos	muniendas	munienda
<i>Abl.</i>	muniendis	muniendis	muniendis

2. The Gerundive, like the Gerund, translates the English verbal noun in *ing*, but the Gerundive is only to be used when the English verbal noun has an object after it: thus:

The reason for sending was this. *Causa mittendi erat haec* (gerund).

But,

The reason for sending the legion was this. *Causa legionis mittendae erat haec* (gerundive).

Observe that the Gerundive and the object of the English verbal noun in *ing* must always be the same Gender, Number and Case, and the Case is always the Case which you would use for the English verbal noun in *ing*.

Another example:

The enemy crossed the river for the purpose of attacking the city. *Hostes urbis oppugnandae causa flumen transierunt.*

(a) The verbal noun (namely, "attacking") must be translated by the Gerundive (and not the Gerund), because it is followed by an object (namely, "city").

(b) Both "attacking" and "city" are to be in the same Gender, Number, and Case, when put into Latin.

(c) That Case is the Genitive because the preposition *causa* (for the purpose of) governs the Genitive, and the Number is Singular because "city" is Singular, and the Gender is Feminine because "city" is Feminine.

Another example:

The soldiers were ready for attacking the villages. *Milites erant parati ad vicos oppugnandos.*

(a) The English verbal noun (namely, "attacking") is translated by the Gerundive.

(b) Both "attacking" and "villages" are to be in the same Gender, Number, and Case when put into Latin, and

(c) The Case this time is Accusative because the preposition *ad* governs the Accusative, and the Number is Plural because "villages" is Plural, and the Gender is Masculine because "villages" is Masculine.

Conjugation of *Capere*, to take

ACTIVE VOICE.

	capio	capere	cepi	captum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capio	{ <i>pl.</i> , cap-	<i>Perf.</i> cepi	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> capiebat	[<i>iunt</i>]	<i>Plpf.</i> ceperat	
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capiat		<i>Pf.</i> ceperit	
	{ <i>Impf.</i> caperet		<i>Plpf.</i> cepisset	
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	capere		<i>Pf.</i> cepisse	<i>Fut.</i> capturus
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	capiens			[esse]
<i>Gerund.</i>	capiendi			

PASSIVE VOICE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capitur <i>Impf.</i> capiebatur	<i>Perf.</i> captus est <i>Plpf.</i> captus erat
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> capiatur <i>Impf.</i> caperetur	<i>Perf.</i> captus sit <i>Plpf.</i> captus esset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	capere	<i>Perf.</i> captus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		<i>Perf.</i> captus
<i>Gerundive</i>	capiendus, -a, -um	

N. B.—*Capere* is a verb of the Third Conjugation, but note the Tenses in the first column which are spelled like the Fourth Conjugation. *Facere*, to do, is like *capere*. Write out the table, omitting the first column of the Passive Voice.

Translate into English:

1. Galli sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles. 2. Navium magnam copiam ad¹ transportandum exercitum pollicebantur. 3. Dum in Gallia Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, legati Morinorum ad eum venerunt. 4. Caesar magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit. 5. Etsi (although) summa erat difficultas faciendi pontis, Caesar flumen transire statuit. 6. Britanni silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa muniunt, quo (where) incursionis hostium vitandae causa conveniunt. 7. In appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris officium praestabat. 8. Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. 9. Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam² ad senatum profectus est. 10. Caesar ad vexandos hostes ex castris profectus est. 11. Cum nostri in castra irrupissent, Germani timore perterriti fuga salutem petierunt, neque prius³

¹*ad* and Gerundive = *causa* and Gerundive.

²Preposition *ad* is omitted before the names of towns if "motion to" is meant.

³*prius* is to be taken with *quam* and the two together = the conjunction "before." Translate as if the sentence ran, *neque constituerunt priusquam ad*, etc.

constiterunt quam ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenerunt. Post hoc⁴ proelium Caesar multis de causis Rhenum transire constituit, sed navibus transire non satis tutum esse arbitrabatur. Itaque⁵, etsi flumen erat latissimum atque altissimum, pontem facere constituit.

⁴Observe the connecting phrase.

⁵*Itaque* (and so) is the connecting word this time.

Translate into Latin:

1. Labienus sent out the cavalry for the purpose of¹ devastating the fields of the Gauls. 2. Caesar sent out the tenth legion to attack the town.² 3. Labienus stays in Gaul for the purpose of (ad) collecting ships. 4. The difficulty of fortifying the place was very great. 5. Caesar advanced into the front rank for the purpose of exhorting the soldiers. 6. Caesar left the camp to exhort the tenth legion.³ 7. Labienus set out from the camp in pursuit of Dumnorix. 8. Orgetorix⁴ was by far the most influential⁵ man amongst the Helvetii. Induced by a desire for supreme power he formed a conspiracy with the nobility⁶ and persuaded the state to make war⁷ on the Romans.

¹Use *ad* (for the purpose of).

²Translate in two ways, using both *ad* and *causa* (for the purpose of).

³Translate in three ways (*ad*, *causa*, and *ut*).

⁴Arrange the sentence so as to have Orgetorix last; then begin the next sentence with "he" (*is*), and in this way the connection of the two sentences will be brought out.

⁵*potens*. ⁶What case and why?

⁷*inferre bellum*=to wage war. This phrase takes a Dative of the person on whom one wages war. Are you to use the Infinitive in Latin here?

LESSON LIV.

THE GERUNDIVE (*continued*).

1. Another use of the Gerundive is to translate the English "must" or "ought."

When thus used, it is joined to the verb "to be," and its meaning is always Passive, even with Deponent verbs: thus,

The soldiers must be recalled from the work. *Milites ab opere revocandi sunt.*

2. Observe that the English in the above sentence expresses present time. If the time is past, the English uses some such expression as:

The soldiers had to be recalled from the work.

The Latin expresses the past time here by simply changing *sunt* to *erant*: thus,

Milites ab opere revocandi erant.

3. If such a sentence as the above has to be put into the Accusative and Infinitive construction, the verb "to be" will, of course, be changed to the Infinitive Mood, *milites* would be Accusative, and *revocandi* would become *revocandos* to agree with it.

4. The person by whom a thing is to be done is expressed by the Dative instead of *a* with the Ablative.

Conjugation of *Esse, to be*

	sum	esse	fui	Supine (wanting)
Indic.	{	Pres. est (pl., <i>sunt</i>)	Pf. fuit	
		Impf. erat	Plpf. fuerat	
Subj.	{	Pres. sit	Pf. fuerit	
		Impf. esset	Plpf. fuisset	
Infinitive	Pres.	esse	Pf. fuisse	Fut. futurus, [-a, -um esse]
Participle	Pres.	(wanting)	Pf. (wanting)	Fut. futurus, [-a, -um]

Translate into idiomatic English:

1. Legati ad Caesarem statim mittendi sunt. 2. Castra militibus sine mora munienda sunt. 3. Carthago delenda est. 4. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda. 5. Vexillum proponendum erat. 6. Signum tuba dandum erat. 7. Acies instruenda erat. 8. Milites cohortandi erant. 9. Cato dicebat Carthaginem esse delendam. 10. Labienus dixit legatos ad se Ariovisto mittendos esse. 11. Nuntii dicunt omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transiisse; auxilium statim esse mittendum. 12. Germanico bello confecto Caesar in Britanniam transire constituit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat. Itaque¹ ad insulam explorandam Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Ipse² cum omnibus copiis in Morinos contendit quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam trajectus. Huc³ naves undique ex finitimis regionibus jubet convenire.

¹This conjunction gives connection, but *insulam* also takes you back to *Britanniam*.

²*ipse* (he himself) shows connection here, because the last verb in the previous sentence has the same "he" (viz., Caesar) for its subject.

³*huc* (hither) shows the connection because it refers to the territory of the Morini mentioned in the previous sentence.

Translate into Latin:

1. The city must be attacked immediately. 2. The camp of the enemy must be attacked immediately,¹ said Labienus. 3. Caesar made up his mind that he² ought to cross³ the Rhine. 4. Our men did not

¹Begin thus, "Labienus said that the camp," etc.

²The Dative of *se* is *sibi*.

³If the English verb with "must" or "ought" is in the Active Voice, the sentence must be changed into the Passive before translating it into Latin, thus:

Caesar ought to send out the cavalry.

The cavalry ought to be sent out by Caesar (*equitatus Caesari emittendus est*).

give the enemy an opportunity of jumping down from their chariots. 5. They said that the time for deliberating⁴ was short. 6. The villages of the Gauls must be burned and their fields laid waste. 7. Caesar said that Dumnorix must be coerced. 8. The camp must be moved at daybreak. 9. The Romans crossed the Rhine for the purpose of waging war with⁵ the Germans. 10. Then he persuades a Gaul with great rewards to carry a letter to Cicero. He sends it⁶ written in Greek characters so that, if the letter should be intercepted,⁷ our plans may not be discovered by the enemy.

⁴Genitive. Why? ⁵*gerere bellum cum* = to wage war with.

⁶*hanc* (this) should be placed first.

⁷Translate this clause by the Abl. Abs.

LESSON LV.

DEPENDENT QUESTIONS.

Learn by heart the following interrogatives:

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	quis	quae	quid	} <i>who, which, or what?</i> (pron.)
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quid	
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quod	} <i>who, which, or what?</i> (adj.)
<i>Acc.</i>	quem	quam	quod	
<i>Nom.</i>	quantus	quanta	quantum	} <i>how great?</i> (adj., 1st and 2nd decl.)
<i>Acc.</i>	quantum	quantam	quantum	
<i>Nom.</i>	qualis	qualis	quale	} <i>of what kind?</i> (adj., 3rd decl.)
<i>Acc.</i>	qualem	qualem	quale	
	quot (indeclinable)			<i>how many?</i> (adj.)

Plurals

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quos	quas	quae
<i>Nom.</i>	qui	quae	quae
<i>Acc.</i>	quos	quas	quae
<i>Nom.</i>	quanti	quantae	quanta
<i>Acc.</i>	quantos	quantas	quanta
<i>Nom.</i>	quales	quales	qualia
<i>Acc.</i>	quales	quales	qualia

“How great is the island?” is a direct question.

Caesar was not able to discover how great the island was.

“How great the island was,” is a dependent question, and is translated into Latin thus:

Caesar reperire non poterat quanta esset insula.

A dependent question must begin with an interrogative, and the verb must always be Subjunctive Mood.

Conjugation of Posse, to be able

	possum	posse	potui
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> potest		<i>Pf.</i> potuit
	{ <i>Impf.</i> poterat		<i>Plpf.</i> potuerat
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> possit		<i>Pf.</i> potuerit
	{ <i>Impf.</i> posset		<i>Plpf.</i> potuisset
<i>Infin.</i>	<i>Pres.</i> posse		<i>Pf.</i> potuisse

Translate into English:

1. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quantae nationes incolerent reperire poterat. 2. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, quae ex Voluseno cognovisset, ostendit. 3. Caesar intellegebat quae res Indutiomarus ab instituto consilio deterreret. 4. Galli mercatores in oppidis circumstant et quid audierint quaerunt. 5. Cum ab Remis quaereret quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello

possent sic reperiebat. 6. Caesar Labienum in continente reliquit ut quae in Gallia gererentur cognosceret. 7. Omnibus rebus ad navigandum constitutis tertia fere vigilia naves solvit,¹ et hora circiter quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit. Reliquae² naves cum nondum in conspectu essent, ad horam nonam in ancoris expectare constituit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, quae facienda essent³ ostendit, monuitque ut ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis, et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris, circiter milia passuum⁴ septem ab eo loco progressus in aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.⁵

¹*naves solvit* = loosened the ships, weighed anchor, set sail.

²Show how the connection is brought out at the beginning of each sentence in this selection. ³Why Subjunctive?

⁴Gen. Pl. of *passus*, a pace. 1,000 paces = 1 mile.

⁵Stationed.

Translate into Latin:

1. Labienus was left on the continent to find out what states were conspiring against the Roman people. 2. Caesar learnt from captives where the enemy were. 3. The captives told Caesar how many states were in arms. 4. The ambassadors informed Labienus how many states had crossed the Rhine. 5. Caesar learnt from Volusenus what was being done in Britain. 6. Caesar learned from captives what the character (*qualis*) of Ambiorix was. 7. Caesar was unable to discover the size of the island.¹ 8. The general discovered the position of the harbours.¹ 9. Merchants told Caesar what the nature (*qualis*) of the island was. 10. So great was the valour of the soldiers that not even² the wounded left the battle. 11. Caesar's unexpected appearance on the banks of the Rhine terrified the Germans.

¹Translate by means of a dependent question.

²Not even, *ne.....quidem*, with the emphatic word placed between.

LESSON LVI.

THE RELATIVE PRONOUN.

qui, quae, quod, *who, which, what*

Singular

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quod
<i>Gen.</i> cuius	cuius	cuius
<i>Dat.</i> cui	cui	cui
<i>Acc.</i> quem	quam	quod
<i>Abl.</i> quo	qua	quo

Plural

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i> qui	quae	quae
<i>Gen.</i> quorum	quorum	quorum
<i>Dat.</i> quibus	quibus	quibus
<i>Acc.</i> quos	quas	quae
<i>Abl.</i> quibus	quibus	quibus

1. The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case. The Case of the relative depends on the construction of its own clause. Sometimes it is the subject of the verb, sometimes the object of the verb, and sometimes the object of a preposition: thus,

(a) *Germani Menapios oppresserunt qui trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant.* The Germans surprised the Menapii who had moved back to their villages across the Rhine.

(b) *Milites quos Caesar in castris reliquerat omnes interfecti sunt.* The soldiers whom Caesar had left in the camp were all slain.

(c) *Agri, per quos exercitus Romanus iter faciebat, ab hostibus vastati erant.* The fields, through which

the Roman army was marching, had been devastated by the enemy.

(d) *Legati, qui ad Caesarem venerant, ita dixerunt.* The ambassadors who had come to Caesar spoke as follows.

2. In (a) the antecedent, *Menapios*, is Accusative, and the relative is Nominative, being the subject of *remigraverant*.

In (b) the antecedent, *milites*, is Nominative, while the relative is Accusative, governed by *reliquerat*.

In (c) the antecedent, *agri*, is Nominative, while the relative is Accusative governed by *per*.

In (d) the relative is Nominative, because it is the subject of *venerant*, not because the antecedent is Nominative.

Observe, however, that in every example the relative agrees with its antecedent in Gender, Number and Person.

Table of the verb *Facere*, to do or make.

ACTIVE VOICE

	facio	facere	fecit	factum
Indic.	Pres. facit (pl., faci-	Pf. fecit		
	Impf. faciebat [unt)	Plpf. fecerat		
Subj.	Pres. faciat	Pf. fecerit		
	Impf. faceret	Plpf. fecisset	Fut.	
Infin. Pres.	facere	Pf. fecisse	facturus, -a,	
			[um esse	
Part. Pres.	faciens		facturus, -a,	
Gerund.	faciendi		[um	

PASSIVE VOICE

	fio	fieri	factus sum
Indic.	Pres. fit (pl., fiunt)	Pf. factus est	
	Impf. fiebat	Plpf. factus erat	
Subj.	Pres. fiat	Pf. factus sit	
	Impf. fieret	Plpf. factus esset	
Infin. Pres.	fieri	Pf. factus esse	
Part. Pres.	(wanting)	Pf. factus	
Gerundive	faciendus, -a, -um		

Facere is a verb of the Third Conjugation, but it has several tenses like the Fourth, and in the Passive Voice the tenses in the first column are Active in form.

Translate into English, accounting for the Gender, Number and Case of each relative:

1. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, agros colunt. 2. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt. 3. Menapii tantae multitudinis adventu perterriti, ex iis (those) aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt. 4. Germani in fines Condrusiorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. 5. Ii (those), qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant. 6. Caesar iis (to those), quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. 7. Omnes, qui arma ferre poterant, in unum locum convenerunt. 8. In Britanniam mittit Commium qui regnum in his (these) regionibus obtinebat et quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur. 9. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nactus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit, quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt. 10. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar commands (impero) the Senones, who were adjacent¹ to the Belgae, to send hostages to him. 2. Iccius Remus, who was in command of the town at that time, sent a messenger to Caesar. 3. After burning the villages which they were able to

¹*finitimus*.

approach (adire & acc.) they hastened with all their forces against the camp of Caesar. 4. Leaving in the camp the two legions which he had last enrolled, Caesar led the remaining six against the enemy. 5. All who were able to bear arms were put to death. 6. He himself determined to pass the winter in the village of the Venagri which is called Octodurus. 7. The tenth legion, which Caesar had sent out to forage, returned at daybreak. 8. Brutus, who was in command of the fleet, did not know what to do.² 9. The Morini, against whom Caesar had sent out the cavalry, had hidden themselves by night in the woods. 10. On his arrival Caesar found his suspicions verified.³ 11. In the fall of the year Caesar returned to Italy to keep an eye on events at the Capitol.⁴

²Dependent question.

³Say, "found that what he suspected would happen had happened."
⁴Dependent question.

LESSON LVII.

THE RELATIVE (*continued*).

1. After a verb of motion the relative may be used with the Subjunctive instead of *ut* to express purpose: thus,

Galli ad Caesarem miserunt legatos qui pacem peterent. The Gauls sent ambassadors to Caesar who were to ask for peace.

2. The relative has its verb in the Subjunctive Mood, if it depends on a clause which is in the Accusative and Infinitive construction: thus,

Dumnorix affirmavit Caesarem legatos, qui essent in castris, necaturum. Dumnorix asserted that Caesar intended to kill the ambassadors who were in the camp.

Table of the verb *Fero*.

fero,	ferre,	tuli,	latum
	ferat	tuleram	
	ferebat	tulerim	
	ferret	tulissem	
	ferre	tulisse	laturus esse
	ferens		laturus, -a, -um
	ferendi		

The Imperfect Subjunctive is most easily formed by adding *t* to the Present Infinitive.

Translate into English:

1. Germani responderunt in terris esse neminem,¹ quem non superare possent. 2. Caesar dixit nullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim² multitudini sine injuria possent. 3. Caesar nuntium misit qui consilia Labieno nuntiaret. 4. Ad Germanos Caesar nuntios misit, qui obsides postularent. 5. Ad quos³ Caesar nuntios misit, qui obsides postularent. 6. Ad quos Caesar nuntios misit, qui postularent ut sibi obsides darent. 7. Ad quos Caesar nuntios misit, qui postularent ut eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent. 8. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, eos,⁴ qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire.

¹Put last in the clause for emphasis. ²Why this position?

³To them. Latin often uses the relative at the beginning of a sentence when the English would have only a personal or demonstrative pronoun. This is called the connective relative.

⁴*ut* is often omitted.

Translate into Latin:

1. The scout brought back word that all who were able to bear arms had assembled into one place.
2. Caesar sent forward scouts to investigate the matter.
3. Caesar sent forward scouts to choose a place for

a camp.¹ 4. The enemy sent ambassadors to Caesar to ask for aid.¹ 5. The messenger said that the Menapii had departed from the villages which they had across the Rhine. 6. The scout reported that the enemy's cavalry which had gone across the Meuse to forage had not yet² returned. 7. The ambassadors said that the Roman soldiers had burnt all the villages which they were able to approach (adire). 8. There was a report that all who were able to bear arms had been put to death.

¹Translate in four ways. ²*nondum*.

LESSON LVIII.

PRAEFICIO, INFERO, AND IMPERO.

1. *Praeficio* (I place in command of) takes the Accusative of the person placed in command, and the Dative of the thing over which he is placed in command: thus,

Caesar Labienum oppido praeficit. Caesar places Labienus in command of the town.

2. *Infero bellum* (I make war upon) takes a Dative of the person upon whom war is made: thus,

Galli Populo Romano bellum intulerunt. The Gauls made war on the Roman people.

3. *Impero* (in the sense of "I demand") takes an Accusative of the thing demanded and a Dative of the person from whom the thing is demanded: thus,

Caesar obsides civitati imperat. Caesar demands hostages from the state.

Table of the verb *Infero*.

	<i>infero</i>	<i>inferre</i>		<i>intuli</i>	<i>illatum</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> inferat (pl., <i>infer-</i>		<i>Pf.</i> intulit		
	{ <i>Impf.</i> inferebat	[<i>unt</i>)]	<i>Plpf.</i> intulerat		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> inferat		<i>Pf.</i> intulerit		
	{ <i>Impf.</i> inferret		<i>Plpf.</i> intulisset	<i>Fut.</i>	
<i>Infinitive Pres.</i>	<i>inferre</i>		<i>Pf.</i> intulisse	<i>illaturus</i>	
				esse	
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	<i>inferens</i>		<i>Pf.</i> (wanting)	<i>illaturus</i>	
<i>Gerund.</i>	<i>inferendi</i>				

Translate into English:

1. Legati responderunt Germanos non priores populo Romano bellum inferre. 2. Caesar a Germanis postulavit ut eos, qui Galliae bellum intulissent, sibi dederent. 3. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, Rhenum exercitum traducere constituit ut Germanis metum injiceret.¹ 4. Caesar obsides, quos Britannis imperaverat, in continentem adduci jussit. 5. Caesar legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, ut naves quam plurimas hieme aedificarent. 6. Ipse in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo² cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire jubet. Qua re³ nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant sese paratos esse omnibus rationibus de injuriis satisfacere.

¹Takes same construction as *infero*, i.e., Acc. and Dat.

²Observe the connecting word.

³Abl. of *res*. Observe how the connection is indicated.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar determined to make war on the Germans. 2. When he came to the province he demanded hostages from all the states. 3. Caesar placed Labienus in charge of the fortifications which he had made.

4. Having appointed Labienus to the command of the legions, Caesar returned to Italy. 5. When the Gauls had determined to make war on the Roman people they sent messengers to Britain to ask for help. 6. Having overawed¹ the Germans, Caesar led his army back across the Rhine. 7. Placing a lieutenant in charge of the ships, Caesar returned to the camp. On arriving there² he found that the Britons had mobilized their forces and were making preparations for war.

¹*injicere*. ²Connecting word.

LESSON LIX.

THE IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION.

1. In English, if a verb is intransitive it cannot be used in the Passive Voice, but in Latin an intransitive verb may be used in the Passive if it is used impersonally. Thus, instead of saying,

Milites acriter pugnauerunt, The soldiers fought fiercely,

a common construction is,

A militibus acriter pugnatum est, It was fought fiercely by the soldiers.

2. Only those verbs which govern the Accusative Case are transitive in Latin; therefore, if it is necessary to use the Passive of a verb that governs the Dative, the impersonal construction must be used: thus,

The ambassadors were persuaded to come,
must be turned into,

It was persuaded to the ambassadors to come. *Persuasum est legatis ut venirent*.

3. The following verbs govern the Dative and therefore must never be used in the Passive Voice except impersonally:

- (a) persuadeo persuadere *to persuade*
 (b) noceo nocere *to injure*
 (c) ignosco ignoscere *to pardon*
 (d) parco parcere *to spare*
 (e) impero imperare *to command (a person)*

Instead of saying:

The ships are injured.

The Gauls were pardoned.

The Gauls were persuaded.

Say:

It is injured to the ships. *Navibus nocetur.*

It was pardoned to the Gauls. *Gallis ignotum est.*

It was persuaded to the Gauls. *Gallis persuasum est.*

Table of the Passive Voice of the verb Vocare.

	vocor	vocari		vocatus sum
Indic.	{ Pres. vocatur		Pf.	vocatus est
	{ Impf. vocabatur		Plpf.	vocatus erat
	{ Fut. vocabitur		Plpf.	vocatus erit
Subj.	{ Pres. vocetur		Pf.	vocatus sit
	{ Impf. vocaretur		Plpf.	vocatus esset
Infin. Pres.	vocari		Pf.	vocatus esse
Part. Pres.			Pf.	vocatus
Gerundive	vocandus, -a, -um			

Translate into English:

- Gallis persuasum est Romanos sibi bellum inferre constituisse.
- Simul atque de Caesaris legionumque adventu¹ cognitum est, Cingetorix ad eum venit.
- Exploratores, ut² erat imperatum, circumstant hominem atque interficiunt.
- Accessum est⁴ ad Britanniam omnibus navibus prima luce neque in eo loco hostis est visus.
- Toto hoc³ in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur,⁴ intellectum est⁴ nostros propter gravitatem ar-

¹Abl. of *adventus*. ²ut with the Indicative = as.

³This. ⁴Impersonal subject, "it."

morum non aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem. 6. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. 7. Bellovacis persuaderi ut manerent non poterat. 8. Nervii Atrebatibus persuaserant ut castra Romana oppugnarent. 9. Capto oppido Caesar omnibus mulieribus liberisque pepercit. 10. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen⁵ quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere poterant magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero,⁶ notis omnibus vadis, audacissime nostros adoriebantur. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar scaphas longarum navium militibus compleri jussit et quos laborantes conspexerat his subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul atque in arido constiterunt, in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt.

⁵The connecting word is *tamen* (nevertheless), that is, notwithstanding the fact mentioned in the previous sentence.

⁶Both *hostes* and *vero* help the connection. *Hostes* is in contrast with *nostri* at the beginning of the previous sentence, and *vero* = on the other hand.

Translate into Latin:

1. The Gauls begged that they might be pardoned.
2. On account of the indiscretion of the common people the state was pardoned by Caesar.
3. A report was brought¹ to Caesar that the Gauls had again entered upon hostilities.
4. Caesar was told¹ that the cavalry of the enemy had crossed the river.
5. It was evident that our cavalry was not able to sustain the attack of the enemy.
6. There a fierce battle took place.
7. It was not possible² to persuade the cavalry to sustain the attack of the enemy.
8. The Nervii persuaded their neighbours to make war

¹It was announced.

²*poterat*. When this verb is used impersonally the dependent Infinitive must be Passive Voice. Say, therefore, "It was not possible to be persuaded."

on the Roman people. 9. As³ our soldiers were wavering,⁴ the standard-bearer of the tenth legion threw himself from the ship and began to carry the standard against the enemy. Then our men, exhorting one another⁵ to follow without delay, jumped overboard⁶ in a body.⁷

³Use Ablative Absolute. ⁴*cunctari*. ⁵*inter se*.

⁶Translate the meaning.

⁷Use the adjective *universus* (all together).

LESSON LX.

IMPERSONAL CONSTRUCTION (*continued*).

1. It has been said that an intransitive verb, if used in the Passive Voice, must be used impersonally. It follows that the Gerundive of intransitive verbs must always be used impersonally, because the Gerundive is always Passive Voice.

They had to jump down from the ships,
must be changed to,

It had to be jumped from the ships. *De navibus desiliendum erat*.

Table of the Passive Voice of the verb *Jubeo*.

	jubeor	juberi		jussus sum
Indic.	{	Pres. jubetur	Pf.	jussus est
		Impf. jubebatur	Plpf. jussus erat	
		Fut. jubebitur	Ftpf. jussus erit	
Subj.	{	Pres. jubeatur	Pf. jussus sit	
		Impf. juberetur	Plpf. jussus esset	
Infin. Pres.		juberi	Pf. jussus esse	
Part. Pres.		(wanting)	Pf. jussus	
Gerundive		jubendus, -a, -um		

Declension of *Is, ea, id* (*this, that, he, she, it*).

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>ii</i>	<i>eae</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>ejus</i>	<i>eorum</i>	<i>earum</i>	<i>eorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>ei</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>eum</i>	<i>eam</i>	<i>id</i>	<i>eos</i>	<i>eas</i>	<i>ea</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>eo</i>	<i>ea</i>	<i>eo</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>	<i>eis</i>

Declension of reflexive pronoun *Sui*.

Singular and Plural, All Genders

Nom. (wanting)

Gen. *sui*

Dat. *sibi*

Acc. *se, himself, herself, itself, themselves*

Abl. *se*

Translate into English:

1. Militibus¹ simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum. 2. Imperator dixit militibus pugnandum esse aut moriendum. 3. Caesar dixit mulieribus³ liberisque parcendum esse. 4. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque jam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent.² 5. Tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut jam ad vallum castrorum hostes accederent. Id⁴ ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente qui summam imperii teneret,² nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data, legato¹ dimicandum non existimabat.

¹In the Gerundive construction the person by whom the thing has to be done is in the Dative. ²Why Subjunctive?

³The meaning of the sentence as a whole shows that this is *not* the Dative of the person by whom the thing is to be done.

⁴Connecting word.

Translate into Latin:

1. The women and children must not be injured.
 2. Caesar said that the women and children must not be injured. 3. Caesar made up his mind that he ought to cross the Rhine. 4. On account of the unevenness of the ground it was impossible to resist the enemy (*resistere* governs the Dative). 5. On the next day Caesar sent¹ Labienus with those legions which he had brought back from Britain, against the Morini, who had again entered upon hostilities. As they² had no place to retreat to³ on account of the dryness of their swamps, they all fell into⁴ his⁵ hands.

¹The main verb is generally placed at the end of the whole sentence.

²Begin with *qui* (who) in order to mark the connection.

³Say, "who since they had not where (*quo*) they could retreat."

⁴Say, "came into the power."

⁵This is too indefinite. Say, "of Labienus."

LESSON LXI.

DEMONSTRATIVES.

Table of *Hic, haec, hoc, this* (near by, in contrast to that farther away).

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>hic</i>	<i>haec</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hi</i>	<i>hae</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>hujus</i>	<i>horum</i>	<i>harum</i>	<i>horum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>huic</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>hunc</i>	<i>hanc</i>	<i>hec</i>	<i>hos</i>	<i>has</i>	<i>haec</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>hac</i>	<i>hoc</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>	<i>his</i>

Table of Ille, illa, illud, *that* (farther away, in contrast to this near by).

	<i>Singular</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	ille	illa	illud	illi	illae	illa
<i>Gen.</i>	illius	illius	illius	illorum	illarum	illorum
<i>Dat.</i>	illi	illi	illi	illis	illis	illis
<i>Acc.</i>	illum	illam	illud	illos	illas	illa
<i>Abl.</i>	illo	illa	illo	illis	illis	illis

Table of the Passive Voice of the Third Conjugation verb, *Duco*.

	<i>ducor</i>	<i>duci</i>	<i>ductus sum</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ducitur</i>	<i>Pf.</i> ductus est
	<i>Impf.</i>	<i>ducebatur</i>	<i>Plpf.</i> ductus erat
	<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ducetur</i>	<i>Ftpf.</i> ductus erit
<i>Subj.</i>	<i>Pres.</i>	<i>ducatur</i>	<i>Pf.</i> ductus sit
	<i>Impf.</i>	<i>duceretur</i>	<i>Plpf.</i> ductus esset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		<i>duci</i>	<i>Pf.</i> ductus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i> ductus
<i>Gerundive</i>		<i>ducendus, -a, -um</i>	

Translate into English:

1. Menapii tantae multitudinis adventu perterriti ex iis¹ aedificiis quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt et eis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi² omnia experti, cum propter custodias Menapiorum non transire possent, domum reverterunt. 2. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetorix. Is,³ M. Messalla et M. Pisone consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus conjunctionem nobilitatis fecit. 3. Caesar iis,⁴ quos

¹*is, ea id*, is generally the demonstrative used when a relative clause follows.

²*ille*, when used to introduce a period, indicates that the subject is different from the subject of the previous sentence. *Menapii* is the subject of the previous sentence, *illi* shows that 'the Germans' is the subject of this clause.

³Unlike *ille*, *is* does not indicate change of subject, but merely helps the connection by referring back to Orgetorix.

⁴Decline every pronoun in these three sentences and point out what duty they perform.

in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. Illis⁵ Caesar libertatem concessit. 4. Caesar et Hannibal erant duo imperatores magni; hunc⁶ Romani oderant, illum⁶ admirati sunt.

⁵*hic* always refers to the nearest. In this case it refers to the subject of *dixerunt*, the word immediately preceding. *hic* is, therefore, often the right word with which to begin a sentence in order to show connection.

⁶When a contrast is to be brought out, *hic* always refers to the nearest, in this case Hannibal; *ille* to what is more remote, in this case Caesar. *hic* is therefore equal to *the latter*, and *ille* to *the former*.

Translate into Latin:

1. Cicero and Demosthenes were two great orators; the latter was a Greek, the former a Roman. 2. After their defeat¹ the enemy² at once dispatched envoys to Caesar to treat for peace. They³ promised to give hostages and to comply with his demands. This⁴ embassy was accompanied by Commius Atrebas, who had been sent in advance to Britain by Caesar. Although⁵ he came as an ambassador⁶ with orders from Caesar they had seized him as he landed on their shores,⁷ and had bound him with fetters, and now that they had fought and lost⁸ they had sent him⁹ back.

¹Say, "having been defeated."

²Begin with the subject and add "in the battle," to be precise.

³As there is no change in the subject, just go on with your verb in the Third Plural.

⁴Along with these ambassadors came.

⁵Begin with *him* to show connection, and use *hic*, the man just mentioned.

⁶For "came as an ambassador," etc., say, "was bringing Caesar's orders in the character of an ambassador" (*modo oratoris*).

⁷Say simply, "having come out of the ship" (*egredior*).

⁸Say, "then the battle being fought, they sent him back." It is not necessary to say they lost the battle. This idea has been clearly brought out in the beginning of the passage.

⁹The *him* at the head of the sentence will do for all.

LESSON LXII.

CONSTRUCTION OF *Cum*.

1. *Cum*, meaning *since* or *although*, takes the Subjunctive without exception.

2. *Cum*, meaning *when*, generally takes the Subjunctive, if the Tense is Imperfect or Pluperfect, but if the action is described as happening an indefinite number of times in the past, *cum* is used with the Pluperfect Indicative, and the principal verb will then be Imperfect Indicative: thus,

(a) *Cum urbem cepisset, mulieres liberosque trucidavit.* When he took the city, he killed the women and children.

(b) *Cum urbem ceperat, mulieres liberosque trucidabat.* When he took a city, he used to kill the women and children.

In (a) the action of taking the city and killing the women and children happened only once, in (b) it happened an indefinite number of times.

Table of the Passive of the verb, *Munire*

	<i>munior</i>	<i>muniri</i>	<i>munitus sum</i>
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> <i>munitur</i>		<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus est</i>
	{ <i>Impf.</i> <i>muniebatur</i>		<i>Plpf.</i> <i>munitus erat</i>
	{ <i>Fut.</i> <i>munietur</i>		<i>Ftperf.</i> <i>munitus erit</i>
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> <i>muniatur</i>		<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus sit</i>
	{ <i>Impf.</i> <i>muniretur</i>		<i>Plpf.</i> <i>munitus esset</i>
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>muniri</i>		<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus esse</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	(wanting)		<i>Pf.</i> <i>munitus</i>
<i>Gerundive</i>	<i>muniendus, -a, -um</i>		

Translate into English:

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, magnopere perturba-

bantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, cum¹ ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela conjiciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset² Caesar, scaphas longarum navium item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri jussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerant,³ his subsidia submittebat.

¹Observe that the action described happened an indefinite number of times, and so we have the subordinate verb *conspexerant* in the Pluperfect Indicative, while the main verbs are all in the Imperfect Indicative, namely, *adoriebantur*, *circumsistebant* and *conjiciebant*.

²Here the action is not described as happening often.

³Here again we have the Pluperfect Indicative in the subordinate clause and the Imperfect Indicative (*submittebat*) in the main clause, because again the action is represented as happening over and over again. Observe that the relative *quos* takes the place of *cum*, because "whomsoever he saw (from time to time) in difficulties, to these he kept sending reinforcements," is the same as "when he saw (from time to time) any in difficulties, to these he kept sending reinforcements."

Translate into Latin:

Caesar was unable to bring the war with the Veneti to a close,¹ for as fast as he captured their towns, they would² carry off all their property and retreat in their ships to the nearest promontory,³ and there they would again defend themselves with the same advantages of position as before.⁴ They kept up these manœuvres⁵ very easily during a great part of the summer, owing to the fact that⁶ our ships were

¹ *finire*.

²"would" is here simply an idiomatic use of the word to express frequent action.

³*promunturium*. ⁴No need to express "as before."

⁵Say simply, "they kept doing (Imperf. of *facio*) these things," beginning the sentence, of course, with "these things" to show connection as usual.

⁶Translate the meaning of "owing to the fact that" by one simple conjunction.

detained by a spell of bad weather,⁷ and⁸ because navigation⁹ was very difficult in a vast and open sea with great tides and no harbours to speak of.¹⁰

⁷Plural of *tempestas* will do.

⁸Use *que* for "and." When two clauses are joined by *que* they are of the same nature, and therefore there will be no need to express "because" again.

⁹Gerund of *navigare*.

¹⁰Say, "the tides (being) great, the harbours almost none" (Ablative Absolute).

LESSON LXIII.

CONSTRUCTION OF *Dum* AND *Priusquam*.

1. *Dum* (while) takes the Present Indicative when the meaning is that while one action was going on, another action took place or was taking place.

Dum ea Romani parant, jam Saguntum oppugnabatur. While the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was already being besieged.

2. *Dum* (until) takes the Subjunctive if a purpose is implied.

Dum nares convenirent, expectavit. He waited until the ships should assemble.

Subjunctive with *dum* because he waited for a certain purpose, namely, in order to give the ships time to assemble.

3. *Priusquam* (before) takes the Subjunctive if there is an end (purpose) in view or an end prevented.

Priusquam consilium cognoscerent, exercitum traduxit. Before they could learn his intention, he led his army across.

Subjunctive with *priusquam* because his purpose was to keep them in the dark with regard to his plan until he led his army over.

4. If *dum* (until) and *priusquam* (before) do not signify a purpose, they will take the Indicative.

In proelio mansit dum pater interfectus est. He remained in the battle till his father was killed.

This does not mean that he remained in the battle for the purpose of seeing his father killed. If it did, *dum* would have the Subjunctive.

5. *Priusquam pugnaretur, nox intervenit.* Night came on before the battle was fought.

This means that the battle was not fought; *i.e.*, the end (*viz.*, the battle) was prevented.

N. B.—The Past Tense for a Subjunctive of purpose is the Imperfect.

Translate into English:

1. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, quid ageretur,¹ sentiret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt. 2. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,² idoneum esse arbitratus C. Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. 3. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt. 4. Dum Romani tempus terunt legationibus mittendis, Hannibal paucorum militibus dierum³ quietem dedit. 5. Caesar non expectandum⁴ sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santones Helvetii pervenirent.

¹Account for the Subjunctives in this exercise.

²*periculum facere* = to run any risk.

³Gen. Pl. of *dies*.

⁴What is the subject of this verb?

Translate into Latin:

1. Making a hasty march of eight miles he arrived at the camp of the Germans before they could receive intelligence of his movements. 2. Caesar de-

terminated to wait till the soldiers, whom he had demanded from the province, got time to assemble. 3. Caesar resolved to lead his army into Gaul before any more states should enter into the conspiracy. 4. The enemy beat a retreat and did not cease their flight till they reached the Rhine. 5. Whilst he was making these preparations he sent Fabius into Spain. 6. There is a river called¹ the Arar which flows through the territory of the Aedui and the Sequani, and empties² itself into the Rhine. Its³ current is so smooth that the eye cannot tell⁴ in which⁵ direction it flows.⁶

¹Omit.

²The sense will not be injured by omitting "and empties itself."

³No need for a new sentence. Continue the previous sentence thus: "With extraordinary smoothness (*incredibili lenitate*), so that (*ita ut*)," etc. Latin, as a rule, prefers one continuous sentence, rather than a number of short sentences.

⁴Translate the meaning thus: "It is not possible to be judged," etc.

⁵Use *uter* (which of two). The river must be flowing in one of two directions. ⁶Remember the Mood here.

LESSON LXIV.

THE CONDITIONAL SENTENCE.

1. Examine the following conditional sentences:

(a) If he comes (to-morrow), he will be put to death (to-morrow).

(b) If he should come (to-morrow), he would be put to death (to-morrow).

(c) If he were present (now), he would be put to death (now).

(d) If he had been present (yesterday), he would have been put to death (yesterday).

In (a) both clauses are future in meaning, therefore

translate both clauses by the Future Indicative in Latin: thus, *Si veniet, interficietur*.

In (b) both clauses are again future in meaning, but the future is not so vividly expressed. Translate into Latin by the Present Subjunctive. *Si veniat, interficiatur*.

N. B.—We have already had the Present Subjunctive translating futurity after verbs of fearing and in clauses of purpose with *ut*. See Lessons XI. and XXXVIII.

In (c) we are expressing something which is contrary to fact in present time. Translate by Imperfect Subjunctive in both clauses.

If he were present (but he is not), he would be put to death. *Si adesset, interficeretur*.

In (d) we are expressing something which is contrary to fact in past time. Translate by the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

If he had been present (but he was not), he would have been put to death. *Si adfuisset, interfectus esset*.

2. If both clauses of the conditional sentence are neither future as in (a) and (b), nor contrary to fact as in (c) and (d), translate the English into Latin literally.

Examine the following conditional sentences, and observe that none of them can be referred to (a), (b), (c), or (d).

(e) *Si tot exempla virtutis cum non movent, nihil umquam movebit*. If so many examples of virtue do not influence him, nothing will ever influence him.

Observe that only one of the clauses is future, and that the Latin is literal.

(f) If he comes he ought to be put to death. *Si veniet, interfici debet*.

Again the translation is literal, when it is observed that "comes" means "shall come."

Translate into English:

1. Si hostes se dedant, Caesar oppidum conservet.
 2. Si hostes se dedidissent, Caesar oppidum conservavisset. 3. Si Caesar adesset, hostes non tam fortes essent. 4. Si oppidani arma tradidissent, non intercepti essent. 5. In omni Gallia hominum genera sunt duo; alterum Druidum, alterum equitum. Illi¹ rebus² divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur: ad eos³ magnus adolescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et, si⁴ quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, iidem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt.

¹*illi* refers to the more remote, in this case the Druids.

²Dative plural of *res*. Compounds of *sum* govern the Dative.

³Notice all the connecting words in the passage: *illi, eos, nam*.

⁴To which class of conditional sentences does this belong?

Translate into Latin:

1. If Caesar had permitted him, Dumnorix would have remained in Gaul. 2. If Caesar should cross the Rhine, the Germans would take to flight. 3. If Caesar had crossed the Rhine, the Germans would have taken to flight. 4. If Caesar were present, the enemy would not await our attack. 5. If Caesar had been present in Gaul, the Germans would not have crossed the Rhine. 6. If Caesar has been created consul, I do not think that Crassus will remain in the city. 7. If the townsmen take up arms, they ought all to be put to death. 8. If Lycurgus should rise from the grave,¹ he would say this. 9. If Lycurgus were living he would say this. 10. The battle, had the Romans lost it, would have occasioned the annihilation of the Roman army.

¹*existeré ab inferis*. Observe that a condition which is future must never be regarded as contrary to fact. What is future must be regarded as possible, no matter how unlikely it is.

LESSON LXV.

INDIRECT NARRATION.

(Oratio Obliqua.)

1. It has already been said that the Accusative and Infinitive construction is used after verbs of speaking: thus,

The Germans replied that they had come unwillingly. *Germani responderunt se invitos venisse.*

This is called indirect narration. In direct narration the exact words of the speaker are quoted.

"We have come unwillingly," replied the Germans, is direct narration. Before translating into Latin we must turn this into,

The Germans replied that they had come unwillingly, always using the Accusative and Infinitive construction to translate the noun clause introduced by the conjunction "that."

2. It has also been said that if a relative clause depends on the Accusative and Infinitive construction it will have its verb in the Subjunctive: thus,

Dumnorix affirmavit Caesarem legatos, qui essent in castris, necaturum. Dumnorix asserted that Caesar would kill the ambassadors who were in the camp.

3. (a) Besides the relative clause, all other clauses which are subordinate to the clause in the Accusative and Infinitive construction will have their verb in the Subjunctive.

Dumnorix replied that he would not cross over to Britain because he feared the sea. *Dumnorix respondit se non in Britanniam transiturum quod mare timeret.*

(b) Caesar said that Dumnorix would pay the penalty if he came. *Caesar dixit Dumnorigem, si veniret, poenam daturum.*

N. B.—The only Moods regularly used in indirect narration are the Infinitive and the Subjunctive.

Translate into English:

1. Barbaris Caesar ita respondit: se,¹ magis consuetudine sua, quam merito eorum, oppidum conservaturum, si priusquam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditionis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis.² Se id,³ quod in Nervii fecisset facturum, finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam amicis populi Romani injuriam inferrent.

¹Give the English both in the direct form and in the indirect. Begin the direct form thus: "In accordance with my usual clemency, rather than because of any merit of yours, I will spare your town, if, before the battering-ram shall have touched the wall, you (shall) have surrendered," etc., etc.

²An Ablative Absolute is not affected in any way by indirect narration.

³Direct = "I shall do that which I have done in the case of the Nervii and shall order your neighbours," etc., etc.

Translate into Latin:

1. Dumnorix replied that if Caesar permitted him he would come to him. 2. Caesar learnt from the Ubii that the Suebi, after they had heard that a bridge was being built, had called a council,¹ and had dispatched messengers in all directions, to order all who were able to bear arms to assemble in one place. 3. When Caesar was in Italy he received news² to the effect³ that all the Belgae were forming a league against the Roman people and were giving hostages to one another⁴ because they feared that, as all Gaul was brought to subjection,⁵ the Roman army would be led against them.

¹Abl. Abs. Latin prefers subordinate clauses to co-ordinate clauses. ²Use the impersonal construction.

³Omit "to the effect." ⁴*inter se*.

⁵Abl. Abs. would be a neat construction here.

LESSON LXVI.

INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

1. Two Moods only, as a rule, are found in the indirect narration, the Infinitive and the Subjunctive. All those sentences which were principal statements in the direct narration have their verbs in the Infinitive Mood, while questions, exhortations, commands, and subordinate clauses of all kinds have their verbs in the Subjunctive. Rhetorical questions (being questions in form only, and statements in reality) have the Infinitive in indirect narration, unless the question of the direct narration were Second Person, in which case the verb is in the Subjunctive. Of course, any question, no matter what the person was in the direct narration, will have the Subjunctive in indirect narration if it depends directly upon a verb of asking, because in that case it is an ordinary dependent question. See Lesson LV.

Translate into English:

1. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse¹ consuetudinem populi Romani accipere ab hoste armato conditionem; si ab armis discedere velint,² se adiutore utantur,³ legatosque ad Caesarem mittant;³

¹Principal statement, therefore Infinitive Mood.

²Subordinate clause, therefore Subjunctive Mood.

³Command, therefore Subjunctive Mood. The direct narration would be: "If you wish to lay down your arms, make use of me as your advocate and send ambassadors to Caesar."

sperare⁴ pro ejus justitia, quae petierint,⁵ imperaturos.⁶

⁴Another principal statement, therefore Infinitive Mood, the Accusative (*se*) which goes with it being understood.

⁵Subordinate clause, therefore Subjunctive.

⁶Supply *esse*, making the Future Infinitive. The construction is then the Accusative and Infinitive, the Accusative *eos* (they) not being expressed. This Accusative and Infinitive depends on the verb *sperare*. "Cicero answered that he hoped that they would obtain what they asked." It is possible to have any number of sentences in the Accusative and Infinitive construction, provided that each clause has a verb of speaking followed by a statement. Thus, "The messenger said that Cicero said that he hoped that they," etc., etc.

Translate into Latin (indirect narration):

1. Cicero gave the following answer to the barbarians: It is not the custom¹ of the Roman people to make terms with an enemy in arms: lay down your arms² and send ambassadors to Caesar. If you do this at once,³ I know that Caesar will pardon you.⁴

¹Before attempting to translate, imagine "he said" to be placed before every sentence thus:

He said that it was not the custom, etc.

He said that they were to lay down their arms, etc.

He said that, if they did this, he knew that, etc.

Observe the change that takes place in the Tenses.

²The Tenses in indirect narration would naturally be Past Tenses, but, just as in English, the Historical Present is often used instead for vividness.

³Begin as usual with the word which will best show the connection.

⁴(He said) that "he knew that Caesar would pardon them." "That he knew" is the statement and therefore is Accusative and Infinitive, but the verb "know" is itself a verb which takes Accusative and Infinitive after it; therefore the clause beginning "that Caesar," etc., will also be in the Accusative and Infinitive construction. See last note of previous exercise.

LESSON LXVII.

INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

1. The Tense of the Infinitive Mood in indirect narration is the Tense which the speaker himself used. In other words, it is the Tense used in the direct narration. In the sentence, Cicero said that it was not the custom of the Roman people, etc. Cicero's own words were, "It is not the custom," etc., therefore the verb "was" must be expressed by the Present Tense.

2. To get the proper Tense for the Subjunctive Mood in indirect narration, use the Tense, not of the direct narration, but the Tense as it is in the indirect form: thus,

Titurius dixit: Quod Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Titurius said that because all Gaul was conspiring with the Germans, their only safety was in dispatch.

Here the Imperfect *consentiret* is the natural tense for "was conspiring." The direct narration would be: Titurius said: "Because all Gaul is conspiring with the Germans our only safety is in dispatch." Now while the subordinate clause, "because all Gaul is conspiring," is to have its verb in the Past Tense (Impf.) of the Subjunctive Mood, the main statement, "our only safety is in dispatch" is to have its verb in the Present Infinitive according to the first rule of this lesson.

Translate into English:

1. Titurius dixit: suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius,¹ nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros: si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in ce-

¹Comparative degree of *durus*.

leritate positam salutem. Cottae² quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere³ exitum?

²The literal translation of this in the direct narration would be: "What result has the plan of Cotta and of those who differ from me?" Notice that the speaker himself says "has" (Present Tense) and remember that in getting the Tense of the Infinitive, the same Tense as the speaker himself used is to be retained in the indirect narration.

³Infinitive, because it is a question in the Third Person, if turned into direct narration. See Exercise LXVI.

Translate into Latin:

1. Titurius spoke thus: My plan is the safest. Fortify¹ the camp with a rampart and a ditch and wait for the reinforcements which Caesar is sending to us. The Gauls will not attack us to-day, because the Germans have not yet arrived.²

¹The Imperfect Subjunctive is the usual Past Tense for the Subjunctive in the indirect narration. The Present may always be used for vividness, as in Exercise LXVI., but do not make a practice of using it.

²In order to get the right tense in the subordinate clause put the sentence indirectly thus: "(He said) that the Gauls would not attack them on that day, because the Germans had not yet arrived."

LESSON LXVIII.

INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

Pronouns and Adverbs.

1. In indirect narration all pronouns are Third Person, and adverbs and adverbial phrases are changed in the manner indicated in the following exercise.

Translate into English:

1. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio, omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis cen-

turionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: Primum¹, quod aut quam in partem, aut quo consilio ducerentur,² sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent.² Ariovistum, se consule, cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse.³ Cur hunc tam temere quicumque ab officio discessurum judicaret?⁴ Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur?⁵ Aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent?⁵

¹The indirect narration begins here and continues to the end of the extract. The verb of speaking is often omitted. Understand "he said that he blamed them" because, etc. In what kind of clause do you expect to find the Subjunctive?

²Give the reason for the Subjunctive. The direct narration would be,

(I blame you) because you think, etc.

The indirect =

(He said that he blamed them) because they thought, etc.

Notice the change from 2nd to 3rd Person.

³Always imagine "he said" before each new sentence: "(He said) that Ariovistus, when he (Caesar) was consul, had eagerly sought the friendship of the Roman people." The direct narration would be: "Ariovistus, when I was consul, eagerly sought the friendship of the Roman people." Notice the change from the 1st Person of the direct to the 3rd of the indirect narration.

⁴Although this question is Third Person in the direct narration, observe that it is here Subjunctive, not Infinitive, as might be expected. The reason is that this question had the Subjunctive in the direct narration. The question originally was: "Why should anybody suppose?" not "Does anybody suppose?" Such questions are called deliberative questions, and they take the Subjunctive whether they are in direct or indirect narration.

⁵Why have these questions the Subjunctive?

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar gave the following answer to the ambassadors: "I do not promise¹ to wait for the hostages, which you have promised² to send to me here. To-

¹(He said) that he did not promise, etc.

²Remember your construction after "promise," which is a verb of speaking—promised that they would send to him there.

morrow³ I shall march into your territory and pitch my camp in the vicinity of your town. Return,⁴ therefore, at once to your people and tell them what I say."

³(He said) that he would march into their territory on the next day, etc.

⁴(He said) that they were to return, etc. Remember that "return" is a command, not a statement.

LESSON LXIX.

INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

1. It has been said in the previous exercise that pronouns in indirect narration are in the Third Person. One person is distinguished from another by using the reflexive pronoun *sui* and the reflexive adjective *suus* to refer to the person who is represented as speaking in the narrative. Other persons are represented by one of the demonstratives *is*, *ille*, or *hic*. If no ambiguity is possible, *sui* and *suus* may be used (are used by Caesar) to refer to the subject of their own clause. If ambiguity would arise from the use of *sui*, substitute the other reflexive *ipse*. N. B.—As a means of avoiding ambiguity a proper name is also used instead of any of the pronouns mentioned above.

Translate into English:

Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si¹ quid ipsi² a Caesare opus esset, sese² ad eum² venturum fuisse: si quid ille² se velit, illum² ad se² venire oportere.

¹After translating literally turn the passage into the direct form and observe all the changes in Persons, Tenses and Moods. Begin thus: "If there was anything necessary to me from you, Caesar (or if I wanted anything from you, Caesar), I would have come to you: if you wish anything from me it behoves you to come to me."

²Observe that all the reflexives refer to the main speaker, Ariovistus, while the demonstratives, *is* and *ille* refer to Caesar.

Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar³ possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi² autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari³ aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

²See footnote on preceding page.

³The proper name introduced occasionally instead of the pronoun.

Translate into Latin:

1. Ariovistus¹ answered Caesar thus: "If I² do not dictate to you what you should do, it is not right that you³ should dictate to me.⁴ The Aedui are subject to me, since they have tried the fortune of war and have been defeated. You are doing me a great injury, because by your⁵ arrival you are reducing my revenues."

¹Rewrite the whole passage in indirect narration in English before attempting to translate. Begin thus: "Ariovistus answered that if he did not dictate to him what he should do, it was not right," etc.

²Use *ipse* here because *sui* has no nominative.

³It would be quite right to put the proper name here as a means of keeping the persons distinct.

⁴*sibi*.

⁵Do not be afraid to say *suo adventu* here because, although the reflexive properly refers to Ariovistus, there is no question of anybody's arrival but Caesar's. This is just the case where the reflexive may be used to refer to the subject of its own clause in indirect narration.

LESSON LXX.

INDIRECT NARRATION (*continued*).

Conditional Sentences.

1. The "*si* clause" of a conditional sentence is called the protasis, and the main clause is called the apodosis. In indirect narration the apodosis, being a main statement, will always have the Infinitive Mood,

and the protasis, being a subordinate clause, will always have the Subjunctive Mood.

2. The Tense of the Infinitive is determined, as has already been said, by using the Tense which the speaker himself used, but the following points must be observed:

(a) There is only one Future Infinitive, namely the participle in *-rus + esse* (or *fuisse*), and therefore this Infinitive has to stand for both the regular Future and the less vivid Future of the direct narration.

(b) In a contrary-to-fact clause (present or past) the Infinitive is the Participle in *-rus + fuisse*.

3. The following changes take place in the Tense and Mood of the protasis:

(a) The Mood is always Subjunctive.

(b) A good working rule for getting the Tense, not only for the protasis of a conditional clause but for all subordinate clauses in indirect narration, is to put the Tense of the direct narration one point back into the past. Thus:

A Present Indicative would become Imperfect Subjunctive.

A Perfect Indicative would become Pluperfect Subjunctive.

A Future Indicative would become Imperfect Subjunctive (because the Present Subjunctive ordinarily expresses futurity). Therefore, a Future-perfect Indicative would become Pluperfect Subjunctive.

N. B.—If the writer wishes to use vivid narration he will bring the Tenses back one point nearer the present, so that you will find the Present used for the Imperfect, and the Perfect used for the Pluperfect Subjunctive.

Translate into English:

1. Barbaris Caesar ita respondit: Se¹ magis consuetudine sua,¹ quam merito eorum,¹ civitatem con-

¹The reflexive refers to Caesar and *eorum* to the barbarians.

servaturum, si, priusquam murum aries attigisset,² se³ dedidissent; sed deditionis nullam esse conditionem, nisi armis traditis. Se⁴ id, quod in Nervii fecisset,⁵ facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam deditionis⁶ populi Romani injuriam inferrent.

²The Pluperfect Subjunctive here stands for the Future Perf. Indic. of the direct: "I shall spare your city, if you shall have surrendered before the battering-ram shall have touched the wall."

³To whom does this reflexive refer?

⁴The direct narration would be: "I shall do that which I did in the case of the Nervii," etc.

⁵Observe that the Tense "I did" goes back one point in the indirect: "(He said) that he would do that which he *had done* (Plpf.)." Observe also that "I shall do," the Tense of the main statement, remains in the Future Tense.

⁶What case and why? See Exercise LVIII.

Translate into Latin:

To these demands¹ Caesar gave the following answer: "I² shall not attack your city to-day if you send me the hostages which I have demanded. If I had done what I did in the case of your neighbours, I³ should have taken your city by storm as soon as I arrived.⁴ Send, therefore, the hostages at once, and do not⁵ expose your women and children to the dangers of a siege.

¹The Neuter Gender of the demonstrative will express this, when it is known that the barbarians had been making certain demands in the previous sentence. Use *ad* for "to."

²Turn into the indirect before translating. (He said) that he would not attack their city on that day, if they sent him the hostages which he had demanded.

³In the main clause of the contrary-to-fact conditional sentence, remember that the Infinitive is the Participle in *-rus* and *fuisse*.

⁴Remember that the verbs of all subordinate clauses go one point back into the past.

⁵The negative in a command is always *ne*, and the conjunction "and" with *ne* is *neve*, not *et ne*.

LESSON LXXI.

VIRTUAL ORATIO OBLIQUA.

1. Sometimes the form of a sentence is direct, although it is in reality indirect:

(a) *Dumnorix a Caesare petivit ut in Gallia relinqueretur quod mare timeret.* Dumnorix begged Caesar that he should be left in Gaul because (as he said) he was afraid of the sea.

Observe that *quod* (because) usually takes the Indicative Mood, but here the meaning is that Dumnorix said he feared the sea. The verb "feared" is therefore in the Subjunctive, because it is in a subordinate clause in what is really indirect narration.

(b) *Magna proposuit iis, qui occidissent, praemia.* He offered great rewards to those who should kill him.

This is really indirect also, for it is equal to: He said that he would give great rewards to those who should kill him. Observe that the verb "should kill" is in a relative clause in what is really indirect narration, and therefore it is in the Subjunctive Mood. The Tense is Pluperfect because in the direct narration it would be Future-perfect: thus,

I shall give great rewards to those who kill (shall have killed) him.

N. B.—If the more vivid construction is desired, bring the Tenses one point nearer the present: thus,

Magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia.

Here the ordinary Past Tense of the Indicative (Perfect) is brought to the Present, while the Pluperfect Subjunctive is brought to the Perfect.

Translate into English:

1. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit ut in Gallia relinqueretur, quod religionibus impediretur.¹ Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, principes Galliae sevocare hortarique coepit uti in continenti remanerent: id² esse consilium Caesaris ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret: fidem reliquis interponere, jusjurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent,³ communi consilio administrarent.

¹Virtual indirect narration. "Because (as he said) he was deterred by religious scruples."

²The regular indirect narration begins here. The verb of speaking is often omitted—(saying) that this was Caesar's plan, namely that (*ut*), etc.

³What would be the English of this verb in Oratio Recta?

Translate into Latin:

These two great nations renewed the war with the greatest bitterness, the Romans¹ being indignant because a conquered nation² had attacked them without provocation,³ and the Carthaginians⁴ because their conquerors had ruled⁵ over them in too insolent a manner. The latter felt, too, that, if their great Hamilcar⁶ had not been killed at the beginning of the first Punic war, they would have swept the Roman race from the face of the earth.⁷

¹Abl. Abs. ²*victi* = the conquered. ³*ultro*.

⁴Same construction as "the Romans" above.

⁵"Had ruled," and "had attacked" above both state what each nation said or thought, therefore these clauses are virtually in indirect narration.

⁶Say, "Hamilcar, a very great general."

⁷Say, "They would have reduced the race of the Romans almost to extermination (*prope ad internicionem gentem Romanorum redigere*).

LESSON LXXII.

THE TENSES OF THE INDICATIVE.

1. The Present Indicative is used as in English, but it is also used :

(a) To express an action which has been begun in the past and is still going on in the present, as,

Jamdiu urbs obsidetur. The city has now been besieged for a long time.

(b) With *dum* (while) instead of a Past Tense in such sentences as :

Dum Romani ea parant, Saguntum captum est.
Whilst the Romans were making these preparations, Saguntum was taken.

N. B.—The teacher may, if he thinks fit, make comparisons with such Present Tenses as, Caesar is coming, Caesar comes, Men desire liberty, The sun rises every day, etc.

2. The Imperfect Indicative is a past tense, and is used :

(a) To describe any action in past time which is regarded as not completed or not perfect. Thus, *discebat* = he was learning, he used to learn, he began to learn. In short, *discebat* has any meaning at all which describes the action of learning as past but not completed.

(b) To describe an action which had been begun in the past and was still going on at a certain point in the past.

Jamdiu urbs obsidebatur. The city had now been besieged for a long time.

Observe that this is but the past of 1 (a), with which compare.

3. The Perfect Indicative has two meanings:

(a) *Explorator rem nuntiavit* means either, The scout has announced the matter (present perfect), or, The scout announced the matter (historic perfect). The latter meaning is the ordinary meaning in narrating past events.

(b) The Perfect Indicative is also used in a subordinate clause with the Present Indicative in the main clause to describe an action which is happening an indefinite number of times.

Ubi (or cum) suos laborantes vidit, auxilia submittit. Whenever he sees his men in difficulties, he sends reinforcements.

4. The Pluperfect Indicative is used as in English, but it is also used idiomatically in a subordinate clause, with the Imperfect Indicative in the main clause, to describe an action which happened an indefinite number of times.

Ubi (or cum) suos laborantes viderat, auxilia submittebat. As often as he saw his men in difficulties, he sent reinforcements.

N. B.—This is simply the past of 3 (b).

5. The Future Indicative is used as in English, and it must always be used in those subordinate clauses where the English uses the present with a future meaning.

Si Dumnorix veniet, interficietur. If Dumnorix comes (shall come), he will be killed.

6. The Future-perfect Indicative describes an action which is not only future but also completed before another action begins. English is generally satisfied with the Present.

Dumnorix cum pervenerit, interficietur. When Dumnorix arrives (shall have arrived), he will be killed.

The action of arriving is future, but it is also to be completed before the act of killing is performed.

The Future and Future-perfect tenses of the four Conjugations are:

	<i>Future</i>	<i>Future-perfect</i>
<i>1st Conj.</i>	{ necabit necabunt	necaverit necaverint
<i>2nd Conj.</i>	{ jubebit jubebunt	jusserit jusserint
<i>3rd Conj.</i>	{ mittet mittent	miserit miserint
<i>4th Conj.</i>	{ muniet munient	muniverit muniverint

Table of Verb of 1st Conjugation, Active and Passive.

	neco	necare	necavi	necatum
	ACTIVE			
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necat <i>Impf.</i> necabat <i>Fut.</i> necabit	{ <i>Pf.</i> necavit <i>Plpf.</i> necaverat <i>Ftpf.</i> necaverit		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necet <i>Impf.</i> necaret	{ <i>Pf.</i> necaverit <i>Plpf.</i> necavisset		<i>Fut.</i>
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	necare	<i>Pf.</i> necavisse		necaturus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	necans	<i>Pf.</i> (wanting)		necaturus
<i>Gerund.</i>	necandi			

	PASSIVE			
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necatur <i>Impf.</i> necabatur <i>Fut.</i> necabitur	{ <i>Pf.</i> necatus est <i>Plpf.</i> necatus erat <i>Ftpf.</i> necatus erit		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i> necetur <i>Impf.</i> necaretur	{ <i>Pf.</i> necatus sit <i>Plpf.</i> necatus esset		
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	necari	<i>Pf.</i> necatus esse		
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i> necatus		
<i>Gerundive</i>	necandus			

Translate into English:

1. Dum haec geruntur, Caesar prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui celeritate adventus nostri perterriti magnopere perturbabantur, castrane¹ defend-

¹ne=whether, and is always joined to the first word of the clause.

ere an² fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu³ et concursu³ significaretur milites nostri pristini diei⁴ perfidia incitati in castra irruperunt. Quo loco qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt, atque inter carros impedimentaue proelium commiserunt: at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque (nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant) passim fugere coepit; ad quos⁵ consecrandos Caesar equitatum misit.

²an = or, in questions whether dependent or direct.

³Ablative Case of 4th Declension nouns *fremitus* and *concursus*.

⁴*diei*, Genitive of 5th Declension noun *dies*.

⁵Observe that the relative has been used four times in this short passage to mark the connection between the sentences.

Translate into Latin:

1. They take away the sun from the world¹ who take away friendship from life. 2. Cato used to declare² that Carthage must be destroyed. 3. Caesar will save the town if the inhabitants surrender before the battering-ram touches the wall. 4. Caesar said that he would save the town if the inhabitants surrendered before the battering-ram touched the wall. 5. Whenever this general took a city he used to kill the women and³ children. 6. When Caesar took this city, he killed the women and⁴ children. 7. While Caesar was delaying in these parts for the purpose of procuring⁵ ships, ambassadors came to him from the Morini. 8. Galba has been king for ten years. 9. Galba had been king of that country for ten years.

¹*solē e mūdo tollere*. The world here = the universe.

²This was a common saying with Cato.

³Use *ac* or *atque*. This will give more force to the cruelty of the act—"not only the women, but even the children."

⁴Use *que*. Here the act may have been cruel, but it was no doubt necessary. Better not emphasize the cruelty. *que* brings two nouns closely together under one head. *mulieres liberique* = the non-combatants.

⁵*parare*.

LESSON LXXIII.

SEQUENCE OF TENSES.

1. (a) When the principal verb refers to present or future time, the Dependent Subjunctive should be in the Present or Perfect Tense.

This is called Primary Sequence.

(b) When the principal verb refers to past time, the Dependent Subjunctive should be in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense.

This is called Historic Sequence.

Examples of Primary Sequence

2. Principal verb followed by Present or Perfect Tense.

(a) *Rogo, rogabo, rogavero* (I ask, shall ask, shall have asked), *quid scribat* (what he writes, is writing).

(b) *Rogo, rogabo, rogavero* (I ask, shall ask, shall have asked), *quid scripserit* (what he has written, wrote, was writing).

(c) *Rogo, rogabo, rogavero* (I ask, shall ask, shall have asked), *quid scripturus sit* (what he will write, is about to write).

Examples of Historic Sequence

3. Principal verb followed by Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense.

(a) *Rogabam, rogavi, rogaveram* (I was asking, asked, had asked), *quid scriberet* (what he was writing, wrote).

(b) *Rogabam, rogavi, rogaveram* (I was asking, asked, had asked), *quid scripsisset* (what he had written).

(c) *Rogabam, rogavi, rogaveram* (I was asking, asked, had asked), *quid scripturus esset* (what he would write, was about to write).

4. The Tense "I have asked" is followed by either Primary or Historic Sequence. If the act is regarded as completed in past time, the Historic Sequence is natural, but if the act be regarded as just completed in the present, the Primary Sequence may be used.

5. Note that in 2 (*c*) *sit* is Present Tense, and in 3 (*c*) *esset* is Imperfect Tense, according to the rule laid down in 1, the Future Participle, *scripturus*, being used to bring out the future meaning.

6. After *ut* in clauses of result the rule for sequence of Tenses does not hold good in the following cases:

(*a*) When the principal verb refers to past time and the subordinate verb to present time: as,

Hæc ita perterritus est ut hodie domi maneat. He got such a fright yesterday that he is staying at home to-day.

(*b*) When the principal verb refers to past time and the subordinate verb describes an act which has begun in the past and has continued to the present (English Present-Perfect or Perfect with "have").

Tam multa mentitus est ut nemo ei tum crederet nec quisquam postea unquam crediderit. He told so many lies that nobody believed him at the time and nobody has ever put faith in him since.

Here *crederet* is the regular sequence, but in the last clause the sense requires *crediderit* in the Perfect Tense regardless of the regular sequence.

(*c*) The Perfect Subjunctive is also used after a past tense instead of the Imperfect when the writer wishes to emphasize an historical fact and one not closely dependent on the main verb: thus,

Hostes acriter cum equitatu nostro conflixerunt tamen ut nostri eos in silvas collesque compulerint. The enemy fought fiercely with our cavalry, nevertheless the result was that our men drove them into the woods and hills.

Here the result depends not so much on the action of the enemy, but rather on the usual superiority of the Roman soldier.

7. After *ut* (neg. *ne*) in clauses of purpose, only two tenses are admissible, the Present Subjunctive in Primary Sequence, and the Imperfect Subjunctive in Historic Sequence.

Table of 2nd Conjugation, Active and Passive

ACTIVE

	jubeo	jubere	jussi	jussum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>	jubet	<i>Pf.</i>	jussit
	{ <i>Impf.</i>	jubebat	<i>Plpf.</i>	jusserat
	{ <i>Fut.</i>	jubebit	<i>Ftperf.</i>	jusserit
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>	jubeat	<i>Pf.</i>	jusserit
	{ <i>Impf.</i>	juberet	<i>Plpf.</i>	jussisset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		jubere	<i>Pf.</i>	jussisse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		jubens	<i>Pf.</i>	(wanting)
<i>Gerund.</i>		jubendi		

PASSIVE

<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>	jubetur	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus est
	{ <i>Impf.</i>	jubebatur	<i>Plpf.</i>	jussus erat
	{ <i>Fut.</i>	jubebitur	<i>Ftperf.</i>	jussus erit
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>	jubeatur	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus sit
	{ <i>Impf.</i>	juberetur	<i>Plpf.</i>	jussus esset
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		juberi	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i>	jussus
<i>Gerundive</i>		jubendus, -a, -um		

Translate into English:

1. Dumnorix petit ut in Gallia relinquatur.
2. Dumnorix petebat ut in Gallia relinqueretur.
3. Dumnorix petiit ut in Gallia relinquatur.
4. Dumnorix petiit ut in Gallia relinqueretur.
5. Dumnorix petet ut in Gallia relinquatur.
6. Dumnorix petierat ut in Gallia relinqueretur.
7. Caesar quaerit quid Dumnorix faciat.
8. Caesar quaerit quid Dumnorix fecerit.
9. Caesar quaerit quid Dumnorix facturus sit.
10. Caesar quaerebat quid Dumnorix faceret.
11. Caesar quaerebat quid Dumnorix

fecisset. 12. Caesar quaerebat quid Dumnorix factururus esset. 13. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt¹ pollicenturque sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab injuria Cassivellauni defendat, atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat.

¹Historical Present.

Translate into Latin:

1. Baculus was exhausted¹ with many severe² wounds, so that he was not able to keep his feet³ any longer. 2. Caesar gave the order to open⁴ the ranks so that they might be able to use their swords. 3. Labienus asked when Caesar intended to come.⁵ 4. Labienus was left on the continent to find out what was going on in Gaul. 5. Who does not know in what honour music used to be held⁶ among the Greeks? 6. On that occasion Catiline showed how great the power of conscience is.⁷ 7. The enemy fought fiercely, nevertheless the result was that⁸ our men had the best of it in all parts of the field.⁹ 8. (Rewrite sentence 13 of the Latin exercise above without using historic present.)

¹*confectus*. ²Many and severe (*gravis*).

³*se sustinere*, to hold himself up.

⁴*laxare*. It is not necessary to say to whom Caesar gave the order. You may take it for granted that it was to his officers.

⁵Express by the Future Participle of *venio* and the proper Tense and Mood of the verb *esse*.

⁶This sounds like the Imperfect, and it would be Imperfect if it were Indicative, but being Subjunctive of a dependent question you must use the Perfect. Why? See consecution of Tenses. The statement in Latin would be: *Magno in honore apud Graecos musica erat* (Imperf.).

⁷Do not use the Present here. Why not? The power of conscience = *conscientiae vis*.

⁸*tamen ut* is sufficient for "nevertheless the result was that." Had the best of it = were superior.

⁹Omit "of the field."

LESSON LXXIV.

THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

1. The Tenses of the Infinitive are:

	<i>Active</i>	<i>Passive</i>
(a) The Present	oppugnare	oppugnari
(b) The Perfect	oppugnnavisse	oppugnatus esse
(c) The Future	oppugnaturus esse	oppugnatum iri

N. B.—*Oppugnatum* is the Supine and is indeclinable.

Iri is the Present Infinitive Passive of *ire* (to go).

Besides the above, *oppugnaturum fuisse* is used in Oratio Obliqua in the apodosis of the contrary-to-fact construction. See Lesson LXX. for all Tenses of Infinitive in the Accusative and Infinitive construction.

2. (a) Some verbs have no Future Infinitive. With such verbs use *fore* or *futurum esse* and *ut* + the Subjunctive: as,

Dicit fore ut puer Latine loqui discat. He says that it will be (it will come to pass) that the boy may learn to speak Latin. (*Latine* is an adverb.)

If *dicit* be changed to *dixit*, *discat* will, of course, become *disceret*, thus:

Dixit futurum esse ut puer Latine loqui disceret. He said that it would be that the boy would learn to speak Latin.

(b) The *fore ut* construction is more usual when the voice is Passive.

“*Dixit fore ut urbs oppugnaretur*” is more usual than “*Dixit urbem oppugnatum iri.*” He said that the city would be attacked.

3. The following verbs take the Present Infinitive where the English has the Perfect:

(a) *Ire debet*, he ought to go

Ire debuit, he ought to have gone

- (b) *Eum ire oportet* (lit., *it behoves him to go*),
he ought to go
Eum ire oportuit, *he ought to have gone*
- (c) *Ire potest*, *he can go*
Ire potuit, *he could have gone* (or, *he was able to go*)
- (d) *Ei ire licet*, *he may go* (lit., *it is permitted to him to go*)
Ei ire licuit, *he might have gone* (*it was permitted to him to go*)

The past time in Latin is brought out by the main verb, not by the dependent Infinitive. Wherever the English is capable of bringing out the past meaning in the main verb, it takes the same construction as the Latin and keeps the Infinitive in the Present Tense: thus,

He can go (now).

He was able to go (yesterday).

But if we say "could" for "was able," we must say "he could have gone (yesterday)," because "could" is not necessarily past time in English, so that to bring out the past time it is necessary to put the Perfect Infinitive "have gone." Latin, however, always expresses the past time by the main verb: thus,

Ire potuit. He was able to go, or, he could have gone (yesterday.)

4. Write out the table of 3rd and 4th Conjugation Active and Passive, using the verbs, *mitto*, *mittere*, *misi*, *missum* (to send), and *audio*, *audire*, *audivi*, *auditus* (to hear). See Lessons LXI. and LXII.

Translate into English:

1. *Magnam in spem Caesar veniebat fore ut Ariovistus pertinacia desisteret.* 2. *Cum Caesar in Italia abesset, Sabinus castris exire non debuit.* 3. *Barbaris Caesar ita respondit: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque*

verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint,¹ alienos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine injuria possint; sed licere in Ubiorum finibus considerare: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

¹Perfect Subjunctive. This is used for vividness instead of the regular Pluperfect. Caesar begins this passage with the regular construction, as is seen by the verb *remanerent*, but he here drops into the vivid construction (the Perfect Subjunctive being as a rule a Primary Tense). The literal translation is: "(He says) that it is not reasonable that those who *have not been able* to defend their own territory should get possession of," etc.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar hopes that Ariovistus will desist from his obstinacy.
2. Brutus should not have engaged such a large number of the enemy in the absence of his commander-in-chief.
3. Dumnorix, fearing lest he should be deserted by all, sent ambassadors to Caesar.
4. If Caesar should come, the city would easily be captured.
5. Caesar said that he would return on the next day, unless he were prevented by the enemy.
6. (After translating sentence 3 of the Latin exercise into English, retranslate into Latin without using the vivid narration.)

LESSON LXXV.

THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

1. A noun, a pronoun (or an adjective or a participle used as a noun) stands in the Nominative Case if it is the subject of a verb in the Indicative or Subjunctive Mood: as,

Cum Caesar abesset, Labienus motum timebat. As Caesar was away, Labienus feared a disturbance.

N. B.—The subject of a verb in the Infinitive Mood is in the Accusative.

Caesar dixit Labienum motum timere. Caesar said that Labienus feared a rebellion.

2. The verb *to be*, *to become*, and verbs of being named, being made, being elected, being created, and all equivalent expressions, take the same Case after them as before them, no matter what that Case may be.

(a) *Caesar fuit magnus imperator.*

(b) *Dico Caesarem esse magnum imperatorem.*

(c) *Numa creatus est rex.*

(d) *Dico Numam creatum esse regem.*

(e) *Licet omnibus esse bonis.*

Table of the Fourth Declension.

Motus, <i>a rising</i>	
Singular	Plural
<i>Nom.</i> motus	motus
<i>Gen.</i> motus	motuum
<i>Dat.</i> motui (u)	motibus
<i>Acc.</i> motum	motus
<i>Abl.</i> motu	motibus

Translate into English:

1. Caesar exercitui Labienum praefecit. 2. Caesar exposito exercitu ad hostes de tertia vigilia contendit. 3. Germani exercitus nostri adventu perterriti statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt. 4. Legatis tribunisque militum quos convocaverat dimissis, Caesar dato signo et sublatiis ancoris circiter milia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus aperto ac plano litore naves constituit. 5. Hi loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus¹ nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, non cunctandum existimavit quin² pugna decertaret. 6. Hi

¹In a series of words or phrases the conjunction is often omitted altogether.

²*quin* (a conjunction, "but that") is always used with the Subjunctive Mood. It is used

(a) After a verb of doubting or hesitating with a negative, as here.

(b) After a verb of hindering, with a negative, *Catilina non deterreri potuit quin conjurationem faceret*. Catiline could not be hindered from forming a conspiracy.

constanter omnes nuntiaverunt manus cogi, exercitumque in unum locum conduci.

Translate into Latin:

1. They were afraid, now that all Gaul had been brought to a state of peace,¹ that our army would be led against themselves. 2. The Aedui asserted that their children ought not to have been carried off² into slavery. 3. They said that their towns were being captured almost in sight of our army. 4. Ariovistus had been called a friend by the senate of Rome. 5. Caesar said that Ariovistus had been called a friend by the senate. 6. It is not permitted to Roman soldiers to be cowards. 7. It is unlawful for any man³ to lead an army against his country.⁴ 8. Finding both wind and tide favourable, he weighed anchor and sailed forward⁵ ten miles from that place.

¹Abl. Abs. Use the Participle from *pacare*.

²*abducere*. ³Say, "lawful for no one" (*nemo*).

⁴Think of the exact meaning. "Country" means so many things.

⁵Any verb of "going forward" will do, because we know he is in a ship.

LESSON LXXVI.

THE ACCUSATIVE CASE.

1. The direct object of a transitive verb is put in the Accusative Case: as,

Caesar Gallos vicit. Caesar conquered the Gauls.

2. A verb which is intransitive may take an Accusative, if the substantive have a kindred meaning with the verb: as,

Hannibal mirum somnium somniavit. Hannibal dreamed a wonderful dream.

3. The following impersonal verbs of emotion, *piget*,

pudet, paenitet, taedet, miseret, take an Accusative of the person who feels the emotion, and a Genitive of the thing which causes the emotion: as,

Eum sceleris paenitet. He repents of his crime (lit., It repents him of his crime).

4. (a) Verbs of making, choosing, electing, etc., govern two Accusatives.

Ciceronem populus Romanus consulem creavit. The Roman people created Cicero consul.

(b) In the Passive both Accusatives become Nominatives.

Cicero a populo Romano consul creatus est. Cicero was created consul by the Roman people.

N. B.—Cicero and consul refer to one and the same person and are therefore in the same case whether the verb is active or passive, but compare with 5.

5. (a) Verbs signifying to ask, teach, and conceal take two Accusatives: as,

Populus Romanus Ciceronem sententiam rogarit. The Roman people asked Cicero his opinion.

N. B.—But this construction of *rogo* is only found (a) with Neuters of adjectives, pronouns, etc., e.g., *hoc te rogo*, and (b) with *sententiam*.

(b) In the Passive the person becomes the subject and the thing remains in the Accusative (called the Retained Accusative).

Cicero sententiam rogatus est. Cicero was asked his opinion.

N. B.—With *quaero* (I question), *peto*, *postulo* (and sometimes with *posco* and *flagito*), the person from whom you ask the thing is expressed by the preposition from (*ab* or *ex*) with the Ablative: as, *Galli pacem ab Romanis petierunt.* The Gauls begged peace from the Romans.

6. Duration of time and distance in space are expressed by the Accusative without a preposition: as,

(a) *Caesar decem milia passuum processit.* Caesar advanced ten miles.

(b) *Decem annos Graeci Trojam obsederunt.* For ten years the Greeks besieged Troy.

7. The names of towns, small islands and the words *domus* and *rus* stand in the Accusative without a preposition with the idea of "motion to": as,

(a) *Caesar Romam proficiscitur.* Caesar sets out for Rome.

(b) *Nervii domum revertuntur.* The Nervii return home.

N. B.—But if the motion does not continue right up to the place named, the preposition is expressed: as,

Cicero ad Capuam profectus est. Cicero set out for Capua.

As a matter of fact Cicero was not going to Capua, but to an encampment in front of Capua.

8. Prepositions as a rule govern the Accusative. Exceptions will be given later.

Table of 4th Declension

passus, a pace

Singular	Plural
<i>Nom.</i> passus	passus
<i>Gen.</i> passus	passuum
<i>Dat.</i> passui (u)	passibus
<i>Acc.</i> passum	passus
<i>Abl.</i> passu	passibus

Most nouns in the 4th Declension end in *us* and are Masculine, but *manus* (a hand, a handful of men, a band) and *domus* (a house) are Feminine. There are a few nouns in *u*, and they are Neuter.

Translate into English:

1. *Eum stultitiae pudet.*
2. *Hac pugna pugnata Romam profectus est nullo resistente.*
3. *Tantum*

terrorem injecit exercitui¹ Romanorum, ut egredi extra vallum nemo sit ausus.² 4. Aristides cognomine Justus appellatus est. 5. Caesare consule, senatus Ariovistum amicum populi Romani appellavit. 6. Cato sententiam rogatus dixit delendam esse Carthaginem. 7. Labienus castra vallo decem pedes³ alto munivit. 8. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci, et quam maximis potest itineribus in Galliam ulteriorem contendit, et ad⁴ Genuam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una): pontem, qui erat ad⁵ Genuam, jubet rescindi. Ubi de ejus adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt,⁶ legatos ad eum mittunt.

¹Why Dative?

²*audeo, audere, ausus sum*, is called a Semi-Deponent verb. It is partly Active and partly Passive in form and the meaning is *to dare*. What is the Conj.? Make out the whole table.

³What case?

⁴He goes only to the vicinity of Geneva. Hence the preposition.

⁵*ad*=at, close to. There is no "motion to" in this case.

⁶*certiores facti sunt* *certus*=certain. *certior* is the Comparative Degree, more certain. The phrase="they were made more certain," a common Latin expression for "they were informed." The active is *certiorem facere*, "to make (any one) more certain."

Translate into Latin:

1. They did not dare to remain, and the majority advised that they should return to their homes. 2. Themistocles informed Xerxes that the bridge which he had made over the Hellespont, would be broken down, and he would be prevented from returning into Asia. 3. Themistocles repented of his folly. 4. When asked his opinion, Themistocles advised the citizens to build a hundred ships. 5. They sent to Delphi to ask what they should do. 6. When Hannibal was in exile in Bithynia, ambassadors from Prusias happened to be at Rome.¹ One evening,²

¹Say, "It happened that ambassadors were dining at Rome," etc.

²The time of day does not matter; say, *atque ibi*, "and there," that is, in Rome at the dinner

when they were dining with (apud) Flamininus, the consul, Hannibal's name came up³ in the course of the conversation,⁴ and one of the legates remarked that he was at the court (in regno) of Prusias. Next day Flamininus tells this piece of news⁵ to the senate. The senators⁶ thinking⁷ that so long as Hannibal was alive,⁸ they would always be exposed to his machinations,⁹ sent ambassadors to Bithynia, of whom Flamininus was one,¹⁰ to ask the king not to harbour¹¹ (a man who was)¹² their worst enemy.¹³

³Say simply, "mention of Hannibal having been made."

⁴Continue the same construction with which you began, "and there (it happened that), mention of Hannibal having been made, one of them said," etc. There is, of course, no need to express "it happened that," a second time. Make one continuous sentence from "when Hannibal" to "the court of Prusias."

⁵This piece of news=*id*, and put it first to show connection.

⁶The senators were called *patres conscripti*.

⁷Who thought, etc. Who—because they, requires the Subjunctive Mood. ⁸Abl. Abs.

⁹Say, "they would never be free from (without, *sine*) treachery (*insidiae*)."¹⁰Among them Flamininus.

¹¹Say, "not to keep (*habere*) with him."

¹²Omit. ¹³Superlative of *inimicus*.

LESSON LXXVII.

THE GENITIVE CASE.

1. Verbs signifying to remember, remind, forget and pity govern the Genitive: as,

Reminisceretur veteris incommodi populi Romani.
Let him remember the old disaster to the Roman people.

2. The following adjectives govern the Genitive: *cupidus* (desirous of), *avidus* (greedy of), *ignarus* (ignorant of), *peritus* (skilled in), *imperitus* (unskilled in), *insuetus* (unaccustomed to), *similis* (like to, generally of likeness in character): as,

Insuetus navigandi mare timebat. Being unaccustomed to sailing, he was afraid of the sea.

3. By far the most common use of the Genitive is when one substantive is used immediately after another for the purpose of defining it in some way. The two nouns are connected in English by some preposition, such as *of*, *for*, *with*, etc. Examples are:

(a) *Patria Ciceronis*, the native town of Cicero. *Ciceronis* indicates the possessor. *Ciceronis* is therefore called the Possessive Genitive.

(b) *Bellum Germanorum*, the war with the Germans. The Germans are the object of the action of making war. *Germanorum* is therefore called the Objective Genitive.

(c) The Genitive also denotes the whole of which a part is taken. *Magna pars militum*, a great part of the soldiers. *Sapientissimi Græcorum*, the wisest of the Greeks.

N. B.—In phrases like *all of the soldiers*, we must say *omnes milites* (all the soldiers), because no part is taken.

(d) The Genitive is also used with an adjective to describe a substantive in some way: as,

Vir magnæ virtutis, a man of great valour.

This is called the Descriptive Genitive, or Genitive of Quality.

N. B.—The Descriptive Genitive must be qualified by an adjective. You must never say, *vir virtutis*, for, a man of valour. If a less emphatic expression than *vir magnæ virtutis* is desired, say, *vir fortis*, a brave man.

(e) The Genitive is also added to a substantive to define its meaning more exactly: as,

Arbor abietis, the fir tree.

N. B.—This Genitive of Definition, as it is called, is very common with Gerunds: as,
Ars dicendi, the art of speaking.

(f) The Genitives *tanti*, *quantum*, *magni*, *parvi*, plu-

ris, *minoris*, and *nihili* are used to express the price or value at which a thing is estimated: as,

Quanti docet? For how much does he teach?

If the thing is actually bought or sold, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, and *maximi* are still used, but otherwise price or value is to be expressed by the Ablative.

Quanti frumentum vendit? At what price is he selling corn?

Magno frumentum vendit. He is selling corn at a great price.

Auro corpus vendit. He is selling the body for gold.

(So, too, *plurimo*, *parvo*, *minimo*.)

(g) The names of towns and small islands of the 1st and 2nd Declensions stand in the Genitive (if Singular) to express the place where: as,

Romae vivit. He lives at Rome.

If Plural, or if 3rd Declension, use the Ablative without a preposition.

Athenis vivit. He lives at Athens.

Babylone vivit. He lives at Babylon.

In the same way are used *domi* (at home), *humi* (on the ground). *Belli* (in war), *militiae* (on military service), are also used in this way, usually when combined with *domi*; if not so combined, *in bello*, *in militia* are used.

Caesaris virtus et domi et militiae cognita est. Caesar's excellence was recognized both at home and in the field.

Hi fratres in bello occiderunt. These brothers fell in the war.

(h) The verb *sum* with a Genitive expresses mark, duty, custom, characteristic, etc.: as,

Stulti est in errore perseverare. It is the mark of a fool to persevere in error.

The Neuter of the adjective may be used to express the same idea: as, *Stultum est*, etc. It is foolish, etc.

If the adjective has only one termination, the Genitive must be used: as, *Sapientis est*, etc. It is the mark of a wise man, etc.

Table of Domus, a house

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> domus	domus
<i>Gen.</i> domus	domuum
<i>Dat.</i> domui	domibus
<i>Acc.</i> domum	domos
<i>Abl.</i> domo	domibus

N. B.—The Ablative Singular and Accusative Plural of *domus* usually have the terminations of the 2nd Declension. *Domi* (also *domui*) means *at home*.

Translate into English:

1. Sueborum¹ gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi² centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui,³ qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt. Hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agri cultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est. 2. Erat una cum⁴ ceteris Dumnorix Aeduus, de quo ante dictum est.⁵ Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum⁶ novarum, cupidum imperii⁷, magni animi,⁷ magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Ille⁸ omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur; partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret: partim quod religionibus⁹ impediretur.

¹Account for all the Genitives in both extracts.

²Would *illi* do instead of *hi*? See note on *ille* in extract 2.

³Show how the connection is indicated between each sentence in both extracts. ⁴*una cum* = along with.

⁵What is the subject?

⁶*rerum* is Genitive Plural of *res*. *res novae* (new things) is an idiomatic expression for "change of government, or revolution."

⁷Observe that *imperii* and *animi* are in the Genitive for quite different reasons.

⁸*ille* at the beginning of a new sentence indicates a change of subject. The unexpressed subject of the last verb (*cognoverat*) is Caesar. *ille* = Dumnorix. ⁹Religious scruples.

Translate into Latin:

1. The Belgae, observing¹ the manner of our army's march during those days,² came to the Nervii by night. 2. The Germans had no time³ for concerting measures or seizing their arms. 3. Any man may err;⁴ nobody but a fool will persist in error. 4. Nothing is so⁵ characteristic of a narrow mind as to love riches. 5. With⁶ the light armed of the infantry and cavalry they joined battle with⁶ the enemy. 6. There is a fountain of sweet water, and⁷ its name is Arethusa. 7. When the war with the Helvetii was ended,⁸ ambassadors from almost all Gaul came to Caesar to congratulate⁹ him. 8. This state has a very great reputation¹⁰ for valour. 9. Caesar, having delayed for a few days in Asia, heard that Pompey had been seen in Cyprus.¹¹ 10. Ver-
cingetorix, on receiving news of Caesar's arrival,

¹Abl. Abs.

²Express simply by the Genitive of *dies*. You will have three different Genitives. Arrange them with an eye to clearness. Observe that the phrase, "during those days," depends on "the manner," and should, therefore, be in the Genitive. If the idea of duration depended on a verb, the Accusative of duration of time would be used. See "for a few days" in sentence 9. A good working rule is: When one noun depends on another it is put in the Genitive, or one noun governs another in the Genitive.

N.B.—The English preposition connecting these nouns may be *of, for, with, during*, etc.

³Say, "Time was given to the Germans neither of concerting," etc., and observe that "of concerting" depends on the noun "time." To concert measures = *consilium habere*.

⁴Observe that "may" and "will" are used in an idiomatic sense. Say, "It is (the lot) of any (*quivis*) man to err; it is the mark of nobody but (*nisi*) of a fool (*insipiens*) to," etc.

⁵So...as, *tam quam*. Narrow = *angustus*.

⁶Do not be afraid to use *cum* in both senses. *Cum*, like the English *with*, means both *along with* and *against* when used with a verb of fighting.

⁷Closer connection would be, "to which the name is Arethusa."

⁸Abl. Abs. and observe that the phrases, "with the Helvetii," and "from almost all Gaul," depend on nouns. ⁹Supine.

¹⁰*opinio*. Observe that "for valour" depends on the noun "reputation."

¹¹Cyprus was regarded by the Romans as a small island.

raised the siege¹² of Gergovia and set out to meet¹³ him.¹⁴ The latter¹⁵ had commenced to besiege Noviodunum, a town of the Bituriges situated on his route. When¹⁶ ambassadors came to him to ask that he would pardon them and spare their lives, he orders them¹⁷ to give up their arms, to bring out their horses, and give him hostages.

¹²*oppugnatione desistere.*

¹³*obviam proficisci* + Dative = to set out to meet.

¹⁴It would be clearer to express the proper name again, especially as the next sentence is to begin with a pronoun.

¹⁵Use the correct pronoun to indicate a change of subject.

¹⁶Show the connection by inserting "from which town" at the beginning of this sentence.

¹⁷It will be easier to put the rest of this sentence in the Passive and leave out "them." "their" and "him."

LESSON LXXVIII.

THE DATIVE CASE.

1. Verbs signifying to command, obey, serve, and resist, verbs and expressions of advantage and disadvantage, and compounds of *sum* govern the Dative Case; as,

Caesar Labieno scribit ut decimae legioni praesit. Caesar writes (commands by letter) Labienus that he is to take command of the tenth legion.

2. Some adjectives govern the Dative, e.g., *utilis*, *gratus*, *amicus*, *inimicus*, *proximus*, *idoneus*, *aptus*, *accommodatus*, *paratus*, *similis* (of external resemblance), but many of these also take *ad* with the Accusative, especially in the sense of *having an aptitude for*: as,

(a) *Locus castris idoneus erat.* The place was suitable for a camp.

(b) *Intellectum est nostros minus aptos esse ad hujus generis hostem.* It was seen that our men were

little suited for an enemy of this kind (had no aptitude for coping with an enemy of this kind).

3. The agent after the Gerundive is expressed by the Dative instead of *a* with the Ablative: as,

Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda. Everything had to be done by Caesar at one time.

(*b*) If the verb from which the Gerundive comes governs the Dative, there will be two Datives: as,

Senatui populo parendum est. The senate must be obeyed by the people.

(*c*) To avoid the use of two Datives where ambiguity would arise, use *a* with the Ablative for the agent, or let the agent be understood from the context, or use a different construction.

4. The Dative Case with the verb *sum* is used to indicate possession: as,

Puero liber est. There is a book to the boy.

Or

Puer librum habet. The boy has a book.

Caesar dixit sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse. Caesar said that there was able to be no friendship to him with them (*i.e.*, that he could have no friendship with them).

5. Verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, *circum*, *de*, *in*, *inter*, *ob*, *post*, *prae*, and *sub* take a Dative of the remoter object: as,

Germanis metum injicere, to inspire the Germans with fear (*lit.*, to throw in fear to the Germans).

But if the literal, physical meaning of the verb is meant, the preposition may be repeated before the noun: as,

Se in ignem injicere, to throw oneself into the fire.

6. The following idiomatic Datives (to which the name Predicative Dative is sometimes given) should be learned by heart:

auxilio esse, to be an assistance

curae esse, to be a subject for care

dolori esse, to be a cause of grief

odio esse, *to be hateful to, or to be hated by (used as the Passive of odi)*

ornamento esse, *to be a distinction*

subsidio esse, *to be a reinforcement*

cordi esse, *to be dear (lit., to the heart)*

detrimento esse, *to be a source of loss*

impedimento esse, *to be a hindrance*

praesidio esse, *to be a protection*

usui esse, *to be of use, or useful.*

This Predicative Dative (or Dative of Purpose, as it is often called) is mostly used with the verb *esse*, but it is also common with *habere*, *dare*, *mittere*, *proficisci*, *venire*, *relinquere*, and such like: as,

Aduatuci auxilio Nervii veniebant. The Aduatuci were coming to the assistance of the Nervii.

N. B.—Observe that the person to whom the thing is an assistance, a hindrance, a protection, etc., is also in the Dative case.

Table of Fifth Declension.

Res,¹ *a thing*

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> res	res
<i>Gen.</i> rei	rerum
<i>Dat.</i> rei	rebus
<i>Acc.</i> rem	res
<i>Abl.</i> re	rebus

All nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dies* and *meridies*, which are Masculine. *Dies* is Feminine in the Singular in the sense of a period of time, or date.

Translate into English:

1. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re¹ ad laborem ferendum emollescere homines atque

¹*res* is a thing in the broadest sense. It means anything at all which the context will permit, such as matter, circumstance, event, fact, deed, condition, case, news, manœuvre.

effeminari arbitrabantur. 2. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum² existimavit. 3. Exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res³ latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat. 4. Cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conjicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli.⁴ 5. Hoc facto, duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, castris praesidio relictis, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. 6. His persuaderi,⁵ ut diutius morarentur, neque suis⁶ auxilium ferrent, non poterat. 7. Cum sibi⁷ quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. 8. Caesar inveniebat omnes Nervios trans flumen consedissee, adventumque ibi Romanorum expectare; mulieres⁸ quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur,⁹ in eum locum conjecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

²What about the agent with this Gerundive?

³*Manœuvre.* ⁴What Dative is this?

⁵Literally, "It was not able to be persuaded to these."

⁶Why Dative? *auxilium ferre* is equal to *subvenire*.

⁷Dative of advantage.

⁸Acc., object of *conjecisse*. *Nervios* is the subject of *consedissee*, *expectare*, and *conjecisse*.

⁹Why Subjunctive?

Translate into Latin:

1. Merchants have no access¹ to the Nervii. 2. On receiving this news Caesar sent forward scouts and centurions to² choose a suitable place for a camp. 3. The two legions which had been raised last brought up the rear³ and served⁴ as a protection for the baggage. 4. So well⁵ prepared were the enemy for the battle that our men had⁶ no time to take the coverings

¹Use *esse* instead of *habere*. Access to, *aditus ad*. ²*qui*.

³Say, "closed the whole column" (*agmen*). ⁴Say *were*.

⁵*tam* alone will do here for "so well." ⁶*desum*.

off⁷ their shields. 5. Caesar, snatching⁸ a shield from a soldier in the rear,⁹ because he himself had come without one,¹⁰ advanced into the front rank. 6. Now¹¹ that hope was brought to the soldiers by his arrival, the attack of the enemy was checked for a little while.¹² 7 Labienus sent the tenth legion to help¹³ our men. 8. Sabinus thought that a lieutenant ought not to fight with¹⁴ such¹⁵ a host of enemies except on favourable ground.

⁷*ad* with the Gerundive. To take covers off=*detrudere tegumenta*, and mind the case of "shields."

⁸Abl. Abs. To snatch=*detrahere*, and mind the Case of "soldier." ⁹*ab novissimis*.

¹⁰Express the noun again. You cannot be too definite.

¹¹Abl. Abs. Use *inferre* for "bring," and see that you put your connecting word first. What is the word which carries the mind back to what has presumably gone before?

¹²For a little while=*paulum*.

¹³Express "to help" without using a verb.

¹⁴Use the Gerundive of *dimico* impersonally. Use *cum* for "with."

¹⁵"Such" here means "so great."

LESSON LXXIX.

THE ABLATIVE CASE.

1. Review the following Ablatives which have already been treated:

(a) The Ablative with *a* or *ab* to express the agent.

(b) The Ablative with *a* or *ab*, *e* or *ex*, to indicate the person from whom a thing is asked.

(c) The Ablative with *cum* to express accompaniment.

(d) The Ablative without a preposition to express cause, manner, means, and instrument.

(e) The Ablative of price.

(f) The Ablative Absolute.

(g) The Ablative without a preposition to express a point of time.

(h) The Ablative without a preposition to express place where, with certain names of towns, etc.

2. The verbs *utor*, *fruor*, *fungor*, *potior*, and *vescor* govern the Ablative Case; but in the Gerundive construction they are treated as though they were transitive: as,

In spem potiundorum castrorum venerant. They had been entertaining hopes of taking possession of the camp (lit., they had come into the hope of, etc.).

(b) Verbs (e.g., *egeo* and *careo*) and adjectives expressing the idea of "lacking" govern the Ablative. *Egeo* also takes the Genitive.

3. The following adjectives are followed by the Ablative without a preposition: *praeditus*, *contentus*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *fretus*, and *liber*: as,

Dignus honore, worthy of honour.

Fretus virtute militum, relying on the valour of the soldiers.

Liber metu, free from fear.

4. The Ablative, like the Genitive, is used with an adjective to describe a noun: as,

Vir summa virtute, a man of the greatest valour.

There is little difference between the Genitive and the Ablative of description, but the Ablative and not the Genitive should be used when speaking of an external part of the body: as,

Viri capillo promisso, men with flowing hair.

But

Viri tantulae staturae (or *tantula statura*), men of such very small stature.

Here the reference is to the whole body, not to a part of it.

N. B.—An adjective always accompanies the Genitive or Ablative of description. Of course, a Genitive which takes the place of an adjective will do as well: as, *Clavi digiti pollicis crassitudine*, nails of the thickness of a thumb.

5. The Ablative without a preposition is used to express the parentage from which one is descended: as, *Aeneas dea natus est*. Aeneas was born of a goddess.

If the ancestry is remote, the preposition is expressed: as,

Belgae orti sunt a Germanis. The Belgae were descended from the Germans.

6. The Ablative without a preposition expresses time within which: as,

Pons decem diebus aedificatus est. A bridge was built within ten days.

Inter (or *intra*) *decem dies* is also used.

7. The Ablative expresses by how much one thing exceeds another: as,

Hibernia est dimidio minor quam Britannia. Ireland is less by a half than Britain.

So also *multis annis post* (many years after), *multis annis ante* (many years before). Literally translated, these phrases are "afterwards by many years," etc.

N.B.—*Post* and *ante* are adverbs here. If *post* and *ante* are used as prepositions, they are placed first and govern their own case: as, *post multos annos*, etc.

8. The Comparative Degree governs the Ablative: as,

(a) *Puer est grandior patre*. The boy is taller than his father.

(b) *Novi neminem fortiozem Caesare*. I know no one braver than Caesar.

Latin has also the word *quam* (than). If *quam* is used the two nouns compared are in the same Case: as,

(a) *Puer est grandior quam pater*.

(b) *Novi neminem fortiozem quam Caesarem*.

N. B.—The Ablative may be substituted for *quam* and the Nominative, or *quam* and the Accusative, but not for *quam* and any other Case: as,

Locus erat magis idoneus castris quam urbi. The place was more suitable for a camp than for a city.

In this sentence *urbe* for *quam urbi* is not allowable.

9. The Ablative without a preposition is used with names of towns, small islands, and the words *domus* and *rus* to express the place from which one goes or comes.

Roma venit. He comes from Rome.

10. The Ablative without a preposition specifies in what respect a statement is true: as, *claudus altero pede* (lame in one foot), *nulla re inferior* (inferior in nothing). This Ablative is called the Ablative of Specification, or Ablative of Respect.

11. The Ablative is used with *totus* without a preposition in the sense of "throughout": as,

Caesar nuntios tota civitate Aeduarum dimittit. Caesar dispatches messengers throughout the whole Aeduan state.

12. The Ablative without a preposition expresses the route by which: as,

Porta Collina urbem intrat. He enters the city by the Colline gate.

13. The following are the common prepositions which govern the Ablative: *a* or *ab*, *coram*, *cum*, *de*, *ex* or *e*, *prae*, *pro*, *sine*, *in*, *sub*. *In* and *sub* take the Accusative when there is motion to or towards.

14. With regard to the expression or omission of the preposition, a good working rule is: Express the preposition in Latin wherever you have it in English, unless you have a definite rule for omitting it.

(a) *Caesar cum Gallis pugnavit.* Caesar fought with the Gauls.

(b) *Legiones circum Aquileiam hiemabant.* The legions were wintering around Aquileia.

Comparison of Adjectives

The Comparative Degree of an adjective is obtained by adding *ior*, and the Superlative by adding *issimus* to the Genitive of the Positive, minus the termination: as,

<i>altus</i>	<i>altior</i>	<i>altissimus</i>
<i>audax</i>	<i>audacior</i>	<i>audacissimus</i>

The Comparative Degree is thus declined:

Singular

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	altior	altior	altius
<i>Gen.</i>	altioris	altioris	altioris
<i>Dat.</i>	altiori	altiori	altiori
<i>Acc.</i>	altiorem	altiorem	altius
<i>Abl.</i>	altiore	altiore	altiore

Plural

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	altiores	altiores	altiora
<i>Gen.</i>	altiorum	altiorum	altiorum
<i>Dat.</i>	altioribus	altioribus	altioribus
<i>Acc.</i>	altiores	altiores	altiora
<i>Abl.</i>	altioribus	altioribus	altioribus

Translate into English:

Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo, ut,¹ quae bello² ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo³ ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin⁴ etiam jumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae⁵ sunt apud eos nata, parva atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione summi⁶ ut sint laboris efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio⁷ assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam⁸ aut inertius habetur, quam ephippiis uti.

¹That they may have (persons) to whom they can sell what they have taken in war. Account for the three Subjunctives.

²Account for all the Ablatives in the extract. ³Because.

⁴In fact, the Germans do not use even imported horses, etc.

⁵Those, which are born amongst them, small and ill-shaped = their native horses, small and ill-shaped as they are, they make capable, etc.

⁶These, by daily exercise, they make so that they are (capable) of the greatest toil.

⁷The preposition is generally omitted before *locus* (and *vestigium*, in the sense of *locus*) when accompanied by an adjective.

⁸*quisquam* is the usual pronoun for "anyone" after a negative.

Translate into Latin:

1. It is not allowable¹ to remain longer² than a year in one place. 2. This mode of life³ produces men of great stature. 3. Caesar makes the ships a little lower than those which we use in our sea. 4. As far as cavalry is concerned,⁴ this state is by far the most powerful in all Gaul. 5. Since all preparations had been made⁵ for the war in Britain, Caesar ordered Indutiomarus to come to him with 200 hostages. 6. Being repulsed by the cavalry, they hid themselves⁶ in the woods. 7. On the next day the enemy took up their position on the hills at a distance⁷ from the camp. 8. At daybreak Caesar moves his camp, and within fifteen days arrives in the territory of the Belgae. 9. There were two routes by which they could leave⁸ home. 10. When all preparations had been made⁹ for¹⁰ their departure¹¹ they appointed a date¹² on which¹³ all were to assemble¹⁴ on the banks of the Rhone. 11. On hearing this, Caesar sets out from Rome and hastens by forced marches¹⁵ into Gaul. 12. In the eyes of the mother¹⁶ the daughter was a greater favourite than the son.

¹*licet*. ²*diutius*. ³Simply say *res* for "mode of life."

⁴"Cavalry" in the Ablative of Respect will express the whole clause.

⁵The Abl. Abs. stands for any kind of subordinate clause.

⁶*abdere se* means to hide oneself. Mind the case after *in*. They went into the woods to hide.

⁷*procul*. ⁸*exire*. ⁹Abl. Abs. ¹⁰*ad*.

¹¹*profectio*. ¹²*dies*. ¹³Time when.

¹⁴"Were to assemble" is to be expressed by the Subjunctive. Observe the virtual command. They are to come together *to* the bank. Mind the case of "bank."

¹⁵*magnum iter* = a forced march.

¹⁶Say, "The daughter was dearer to," etc.

LESSON LXXX.

THE POSITION OF WORDS, PHRASES, AND CLAUSES.

1. Attributes, whether adjectives, substantives in apposition, or oblique cases taking the place of adjectives, usually follow their substantives, but

2. Demonstratives, and adjectives of number and quantity (*e.g.*, *magnus*), usually precede their substantives.

3. Rules 1 and 2 are often reversed for clearness, emphasis, or rhythm.

4. The preposition precedes its case.

5. Adverbs and adverbial phrases precede the verb or adjective which they modify.

6. Negatives precede what they negative, whether it be a word or a whole sentence. Do not say, *non ferri potest*, but *ferri non potest*.

7. Relative pronouns, interrogative pronouns, and adverbial conjunctions regularly stand at the head of their clauses.

8. In English the tendency is to bring together words which are closely connected in sense, but in Latin the tendency is to separate two words which are obviously in agreement, and to place between them all words, phrases and clauses which relate to them. In illustration, observe the following Latin sentence as it grows.

Caesar advanced. *Caesar processit*.

Here is our main subject in agreement with the main verb.

Caesar advanced into the front rank. *Caesar in primam aciem processit*.

Caesar and *processit* are the two words in agreement. They are separated, and *in primam aciem* is placed between.

Caesar, having set out from the exhortation of the tenth legion to the right wing, advanced into the front

rank. *Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, in primam aciem processit.*

Caesar and *profectus* are in agreement. They, too, are separated, and *ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu* is placed between. Note also the phrase *ab decimae legionis cohortatione*. The preposition *ab* and its Case *cohortatione* are separated, and *decimae legionis* is inserted between.

Caesar, having set out from the exhortation of the tenth legion to the right wing, advanced into the front rank when he saw his men hard pressed. *Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri vidit, in primam aciem processit.*

The phrase "when he saw his men hard pressed" tells the time when *Caesar* advanced, and so it, too, is placed between *Caesar* and *processit*.

The following clause also tells what he saw before he advanced, so it, too, will be placed between *Caesar* and *processit*:

and when he saw that, the standards being collected into one place, the soldiers of the twelfth legion being all huddled together were a hindrance to themselves in the battle,

Inserting this new clause, we have:

Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit . . . in primam aciem processit.

Now, after all these things, *Caesar* saw

(a) that all the centurions of the fourth cohort had been killed;

(b) that the standard-bearer had been slain;

(c) that the standard had been lost;

(d) that almost all the centurions of the other cohorts had been either wounded or killed;

(e) that among them P. Sextius Baculus, a very brave man, had been overcome with many severe wounds, so that he was not able to keep his feet.

It was because of all these things that Caesar advanced into the front rank himself. All these clauses are therefore placed between *Caesar* and *processit*. Expressing them by the Ablative Absolute, we now have:

Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis, signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset: . . . in primam aciem processit.

Further, before advancing into the front rank, Caesar saw

(a) that the rest were more inactive,

(b) and that some in the rear were deserting the battle and going off,

(c) that the enemy never stopped coming up from the lower ground in front,

(d) and that they were pressing on from both sides,

(e) and that matters were at a crisis,

(f) and that there were no reinforcements which could be sent up.

Inserting all these clauses as before, we now have:

Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem ease in angusto vidit

(verb repeated for clearness) *neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, . . . in primam aciem processit.*

Finally, before Caesar advanced into the front rank

(a) he snatched a shield from a soldier in the rear,

(b) because he himself had come there without a shield.

Inserting these clauses as before, and adding the clauses which tell what Caesar did after he advanced into the front rank, we have the following

MODEL SENTENCE:

Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo Publio Sertio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto ut jam se sustinere non posset; reliquos esse tardiores, et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare, et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium quod submitti posset, scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent.

Now take one of the subordinate clauses: *hostes neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere.*

Hostes is the subject of *intermittere*, and they are separated by the words referring to them.

Examine all the subordinate clauses in this way. Notice where the order above referred to is not carried

out, and find the reasons. For example, in the clause, "*quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis*," *quartae cohortis* should be between the two Ablatives, *centurionibus* and *occisis*, but *quartae cohortis* is designedly placed first in order to mark the contrast with *reliquarum cohortium*, which is also placed first in the next clause.

Translate into English:

1. Caesar, obsidibus acceptis, primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido traditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit, exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. 2. Caesar, necessariis rebus imperatis, ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. 3. Caesar, cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones¹ conjungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. 4. Cum² jam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur, ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela, nostris deficerent, atque hostes acrius instarent, languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere, et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset jam ad extremum perducta casum. P. Sextius Baculus, primipili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt, atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. 5. Eodem fere

¹*Legiones* is the subject of *jungerent*; *sese* is the object.

²In this sentence we have several subordinate clauses of time before the subject, *Baculus*, is named. The reason is that *Baculus* is not intimately connected with any of them, and so they are all placed outside of, not between, *Baculus* and his verb *accurrunt*. Notice, on the other hand, that in the first three sentences, the subject Caesar is closely connected with the intervening clauses. In the first sentence it was Caesar that received the hostages; in the second it was Caesar who, etc.

tempore,³ Publius Crassus,⁴ cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine, et multitudine hominum, ex tertia parte Galliae est aestimanda, cum intellegeret in his locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praeconinus, legatus, exercitu expulso, interfectus esset, atque unde Lucius Manilius, proconsul, impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. 6. Atque,⁵ in ea re⁶ omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi⁷ Adcantuannus,⁸ qui summam imperii tenebat, cum sexcentis devotis, quos illi soldurios⁹ appellant quorum haec est conditio, uti omnibus in

³*eodem fere tempore* is placed before the subject to indicate the connection with what has gone before. This is the regular practice.

⁴Notice the following pairs of words in agreement, and observe how the words referring to them are placed between: *Crassus.... intellegebat*; *quae pars.... aestimanda*; *Praeconinus.... interfectus esset*; *L. Manilius.... profugisset*.

⁵A certain town, of which Adcantuannus was in command, had surrendered and the inhabitants were handing over their arms to the Roman soldiers.

⁶The phrase *in ea re* is placed early in the sentence to show the connection with what went before. See Note 5.

⁷The phrase, *alia ex parte oppidi*, is also introduced before the subject. If you did not place this phrase where it is, where would you place it? Besides, observe that the phrase is intimately connected in meaning with the previous clause. It was when the minds of our men were occupied with that matter (*i.e.*, with receiving the arms) in *one* part of the town, that Adcantuannus attempted to make a sally from *another* part.

⁸The verb for Adcantuannus is *impetravit*, but the sentence is so long that Caesar introduces the subject again towards the end—*um his Adcantuannus. cum hi=cum sexcentis devotis*, already mentioned. The gist of the whole sentence is as follows: *Adcantuannus cum sexcentis devotis eruptionem facere conatus.... repulsus in oppidum, tamen uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit*. Adcantuannus, though he attempted to make a sally with six hundred devoted followers, and was driven back into the town, nevertheless obtained this indulgence from Crassus that he should have the advantage of the same terms of surrender (as the other inhabitants of the town).

⁹From *quos illi soldurios* to *mori recusaretur* is simply a definition of the term *devotis*. Leave all this out and translate what remains.

vita commodis una cum his fruuntur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint; si quid iis per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant, aut sibi mortem consciscant; neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam,¹⁰ qui, eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae devovisset, mortem recusaret cum iis. Adcantuannus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditionis conditione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

¹⁰ Account for the unusual position of *quisquam*, and point out all the pairs of words as in Note 4. Observe that in clauses like *ut omnibus . . . fruuntur*, where no subject is expressed, the pair is *ut . . . fruuntur*, because we at once associate a Subjunctive with the conjunction which requires the Subjunctive.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar, after delaying¹ a few days in their² territory, burnt³ all their villages and buildings, cut down their corn, and retreated⁴ into the territory of the Ubii. 2. On discovering these things,⁵ the chiefs of Britain, who had come to Caesar after the battle, held a conference with one another and resolved to renew the war. 3. On discovering these things, the chiefs of Britain, who had come to Caesar after the battle, held a conference with one another, and, perceiving⁶ that

¹*moratus* = having delayed. A few days in their territory will go between *Caesar . . . moratus*.

²*eorum*. Where should it be placed?

³Notice the co-ordinate verbs, burnt, cut down, retreated. Latin prefers one main verb with the other clauses subordinate. Turn the clauses with "burnt" and "cut down" into the Abl. Abs., and make "retreated" your main verb.

⁴*se recipere*.

⁵Begin with "these things" in order to mark the connection with what went before. Notice that you have two co-ordinate verbs, "held" and "resolved." Say, *inter se collocti* = having talked among themselves. Your pairs will now be: The chiefs . . . resolved (last word in the whole sentence); the chiefs . . . having talked; who . . . had come.

⁶Perceiving and discovering. Say when they perceived and (when) they discovered.

cavalry, ships and corn were wanting to the Romans, and discovering the small number⁷ of our soldiers from the smallness of the camp,⁸ resolved to renew the war. †. On discovering these things, the chiefs of Britain, who had come to Caesar after the battle, held a conference with one another, and, perceiving that cavalry, ships and corn were wanting to the Romans, and discovering the small number of our soldiers from the small extent of the camp (which⁹ was even more contracted than usual,¹⁰ because Caesar had taken over¹¹ the legions without baggage¹²) resolved to renew the war.

⁷Small number = *paucitas*.

⁸Smallness = *exiguitas*. The new pairs will be: when (they) . . . perceived; and (when they) . . . discovered. The English "they" is expressed in the verb as usual, but you can imagine it to be after "when," where the subject would be if expressed. There is no need to repeat "when," because "discovered," being in the Imperfect Subjunctive like "perceived," it will be at once evident that "when" is understood.

⁹Remember that *castra* is Plural Neuter.

¹⁰"More contracted than usual" is to be expressed simply by the comparative of *angustus*.

¹¹Observe the pairs in the part which has been added: which . . . more contracted; Caesar . . . had taken over.

¹²Emphasize the phrase, "without baggage," by placing it out of its usual position.

LESSON LXXXI.

THE POSITION OF WORDS (*continued*).

1. Most subordinate clauses come before the principal verb. See the model sentence in the previous exercise.
2. Final clauses frequently come after the principal verb. See last clause of the model sentence.
3. Indirect questions often come after the principal verb.
4. Clauses of result come after the principal verb.

5. The position of the following conjunctions should be noticed:

- (a) *nam* (for) always the first word.
- (b) *namque* (for) always the first word.
- (c) *enim* (for) after one, rarely after two words.
- (d) *itaque* (therefore) almost always first.
- (e) *igitur* (therefore) usually after one or two words.
- (f) *etiam* (even) immediately before the word it emphasizes; *quoque* and *quidem* immediately after.
- (g) *tamen* (nevertheless) first except for emphasis.
- (h) *autem* and *vero* (now, moreover, but) after one word or two, if the two are closely connected.

6. Except when there is a complete change in the subject matter, every Latin sentence should have at the beginning or near the beginning a word which will carry the mind back to the preceding sentence. This is done by such words as are detailed in 5 above, or by such words as:

(a) *interim*, *interea*, meanwhile (*i.e.*, while the events related in the previous sentence or sentences were going on).

(b) *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, this or that (person or thing mentioned in the previous sentence).

(c) *qui*, who or which (referring to somebody or something immediately preceding).

(d) a noun or pronoun (if it is a noun or pronoun repeated from the preceding sentence).

(e) a noun or pronoun in contrast with one in the preceding sentence.

(f) a verb (if the subject of the verb is the same as the subject of the verb in the sentence immediately preceding).

(g) an appropriate conjunction.

(h) adverbs and adverbial phrases of time and place, *e.g.*, *tum*, *postero die*, *eo*, *ibi*, *huc*, etc.

Translate into English:

Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter; nostri¹ tamen, quod neque ordines servare, neque firmiter insistere,

neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magno opere perturbabantur. Hostes² vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur: plures paucos circumsistebant: alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod³ cum animus advertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit, et, quos laborantes conspexerat, iis subsidia submittebat. Nostri,⁴ simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consequutis, in hostes impetum fecerunt, atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc⁵ unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari deficit.

(The following notes refer to the connectives between the periods.)

¹*nostri* is implied in *utrisque. tamen*, 5 (g).

²*hostes* is in contrast with *nostri*, 6 (e). *vero*, 5 (h).

³*quod*, 6 (c). ⁴*nostri* is suggested in *iis*. ⁵*hoc*, 6 (b).

LESSON LXXXII.

THE POSITION OF WORDS (*continued*).

1. Review the rules for the position of words, and the connection of clauses and periods.

2. It has been said that words in agreement are generally separated, but the relative should be placed as near as possible to the antecedent. Bring the antecedent, if necessary, towards the end of its own clause: as,

Ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt qui se excusarent. *Legati* would naturally stand at the beginning.

3. Indirect narration comes after the principal verb, because the verb of speaking is quite unimportant, and in fact is often omitted.

Translate into English:

Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen¹ uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo² cum venisset, animadvertit ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa³ autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, ejusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His⁴ rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque (Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi jussit. Sed⁵ ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua extarent, ut hostes⁶ impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

(The references are to the rules in Lesson LXXXI.)

¹*quod flumen*. Instead of bringing the antecedent *flumen* to the end of the previous clause Caesar has repeated it after the relative. This is just as clear, and at the same time gives more prominence to the historical fact contained in the relative clause.

²*Eo*, 6 (h). ³*Ripa*, noun repeated, 6 (d). *autem*, 5 (h).

⁴*His*, 6 (b). ⁵*Sed*, 6 (g). ⁶*ut hostes*, 4.

Translate into Latin:

There was a marsh of no great extent between our army and the army¹ of the enemy. The latter² were waiting to see if our men would cross this;³ our men, also,⁴ were under arms ready to attack them while in disorder, if the first attempt to cross should be made by them. In the meantime⁵ the battle was begun by the cavalry of both armies coming into action. As neither army⁶ would take the initiative in crossing the swamp, Caesar led his men back into camp, not-

(The references are to Lesson LXXXI.)

¹No need to repeat.

²It would be clearer to repeat the noun. ³See 6 (b).

⁴*nostri autem*. *nostri* gives the contrast with *hostes*, 6 (d). *autem*, 5 (h). ⁵See 6 (a).

⁶*ubi*, 6 (g), and *neutri* (neither army) in the plural will embrace both "the enemy" and "our men" previously mentioned.

withstanding the fact that our cavalry had the best of it in the skirmish with the enemy's horse.

N.B.—In the last sentence observe that “notwithstanding the fact that,” etc., happened before Caesar led his men back, and the sentence should, therefore, end thus : *Caesar suos in castra reduxit*.

VOCABULARY.

of no great extent	not great
to wait to see if	<i>expectare si</i>
while in disorder	<i>impeditus</i>
the first attempt to cross	a beginning (<i>initium</i>) of crossing
the battle was begun by	it was fought between the two lines in a cavalry battle
take the initiative, etc.	make a beginning of crossing
notwithstanding the fact, etc.	express simply by an Abl. Abs. thus, the cavalry battle being more favourable (<i>secundus</i>) to our men

LESSON LXXXIII.

ABSTRACT TERMS.

1. In English abstract terms are common. In Latin they are to be avoided except when the abstract quality itself is under discussion: as,

(a) Caesar takes possession of Rome. *Caesar Romanam occupat*.

But

(b) Cicero wrote a treatise on friendship. *Cicero de amicitia scripsit*.

2. Abstract terms may often be avoided by expressing the meaning by a verb.

(a) He made these preparations—he prepared these things.

(b) He took his departure—he went away.

(c) The enemy beat a retreat—the enemy took themselves back, or turned their backs.

3. The dependent question gets rid of an abstract noun.

(a) He did not perceive the nature and extent of the danger—he did not perceive of what kind (*qualis*) and how great the danger was.

(b) His destination was a general secret=nobody knew where he was going.

Translate into English, using as many abstract terms as you can:

1. L. Domitio Ap. Claudio consulibus,¹ discedens² ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotaennis facere consuerat,³ legatis imperat,⁴ quos legionibus praefererat,⁵ uti quam plurimas possent hieme naves aedificandas⁶ veteresque reficiendas⁷ curarent.⁸ 2. Caesar, etsi intellegebat qua de causa ea dicerentur, quaeque eum⁹ res ab instituto consilio¹⁰ deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur, omnibus ad Britannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum ducentis obsidibus venire iussit.

¹consulship.

²departure.

³custom.

⁴injunctions.

⁵in command.

⁶construction.

⁷repairing.

⁸Translate by see to, or urge on.

⁹eum = Indutiomarus.

¹⁰consilio = the plan of Indutiomarus, which was to hold out against the invasion of Caesar with a view to obtaining the chief power in his own state for himself. After some time, however, Indutiomarus found that all the chief men were deserting him, and so he thought it wise to send ambassadors to Caesar with many plausible excuses. *ea* = these plausible excuses (which have been mentioned in a previous chapter).

Translate into Latin, avoiding abstract terms wherever you can:

The enemy immediately made a hasty march to the river Axona, which,¹ as has already been said, flowed past the rear of our camp. Finding a ford,² they made an attempt to effect a crossing with part of their forces for the purpose of storming the fort of which Q. Titurius was in command.

¹Which has been said to be behind our camp.

²Make the connection plain by saying, "There a ford having been found." See Lesson LXXXI, 6 (*h*).

LESSON LXXXIV.

THE IMPERATIVE MOOD. THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD IN THE PRINCIPAL SENTENCE.

1. The Imperative Mood is used only when a command is 2nd person and affirmative: as,
Desilite, inquit. "Jump down," said he. (Direct narration is used with *inquit*.)

2. If the command is 2nd person and negative, use *noli* (be unwilling) and the Infinitive: as, *Noli putare*, do not suppose; or *ne* and Present or Perfect Subjunctive, as *Ne putes*, or *Ne putaveris*.

3. All other commands and exhortations are to be expressed by the Present Subjunctive, whether they are negative or affirmative: as,

(a) *Pro patria pugnemus.* Let us fight for our native land.

(b) *Aut bibat aut abeat.* Let him drink or depart.

(c) *Ne desperemus.* Let us not despair.

The following table may be useful:

Commands and Exhortations.

1st and 3rd Persons	2nd Person
(a) Affirmative = Pres. Subj.	(a) Affirmative = Imper. Mood.
(b) Negative = <i>ne</i> and Pres. Subj.	(b) Negative = <i>noli</i> + Infin. (or <i>ne</i> and Perf. or Pres. Subj.)

4. Wishes are expressed by *utinam* and the

(a) Present Subjunctive for a wish which may be realized: as,

Utinam id sit, quod spero. May my hope be realized.

(b) Imperfect Subjunctive for a vain wish in present time; as

Utinam Caesar adesset. Would that Caesar were present (now).

Utinam Caesar adfuisset. Would that Caesar had been present (then).

The negative is *ne* or *non*.

5. The Subjunctive is used in questions of perplexity, where no answer is really expected:

(a) *Quid faciam?* What am I to do?

(b) *Quid facerem?* What was I to do? What should I have done?

Table of the Imperative Mood.

1st Conj.	2nd Conj.
2nd Sing. porta	2nd Sing. mone
2nd Pl. portate	2nd Pl. monete
3rd Conj.	4th Conj.
2nd Sing. mitte	2nd Sing. desili
2nd Pl. mittite	2nd Pl. desilite

Translate into English:

1. Unusquisque se non corpus suum, sed conjugem ac liberos parvos armis protegere putet. 2. Delige centenos viros ex omni peditibus¹ atque equite, cum quibus ad me vigilia prima venias;² nunc corpora curare tempus est. 3. Noli putare, Brute, quemquam uberiores ad dicendum fuisse quam C. Gracchum. 4. Ariovistus ita respondit: se prius in Galliam venisse, quam populum Romanum. Nunquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae fines egressum. Quid sibi vellet,³ cur in suas possessiones veniret?³ Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam,⁴ sicut illam nostram.

¹*pedes* and *eques* are used even in the Sing. instead of *peditatus* and *equitatus*. So *miles* in the sense of soldiery, soldiers.

²Why Subj.? ³Account for this Subj.

⁴*Hanc Galliam*, this Gaul where they stood = this part of Gaul.

Translate into Latin:

1. God save our gracious king. 2. Would that Caesar had not been killed. 3. Would that Caesar were alive. 4. What was he to do when all his countrymen were conspiring against Rome? 5. (Turn sentences 2 and 3 of the Latin exercise into Oratio Obliqua.) 6. (Turn passage 4 of the Latin exercise into Oratio Recta.)

LESSON LXXXV.

TRANSITIVE VERBS USED INTRANSITIVELY.

1. In English many verbs are used both transitively and intransitively: as,

(a) The enemy is increasing (intransitive).

(b) Caesar increases his army (transitive).

2. In Latin the same verb must not be used both transitively and intransitively as in English. The Latin for (a) and (b) is: (a) *Hostes crescunt*. (b) *Caesar exercitum auget*. *Cresco* is intransitive, and *augeo* is transitive.

3. But there are not always two verbs in Latin with the same meaning, the one transitive and the other intransitive. When it is necessary to get the intransitive meaning from a transitive verb, turn the verb into the Passive Voice, or add the Accusative of the reflexive pronoun: thus,

(a) *Caesar castra movet*. Caesar moves his camp.

(b) *Tellus movetur* (or *movet se*). The earth moves (*lit.*, the earth is moved, or moves itself).

Translate into English:

1. Ad haec Caesar respondit: se, magis consuetudine sua, quam merito eorum, civitatem conservaturum, si, priusquam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent.¹

2. Romani ponte Ticinum jungunt,² tutandique pontis causa castellum insuper imponunt. 3. Caesar eas cohortes cum exercitu suo conjunxit.³ 4. P. Crassum

¹*se dedidissent*. *dedo* is transitive and means *I give up*. *si se dedidissent* therefore = if they gave themselves up. This may be rendered in English by "if they surrendered," because "surrender" in English is used both transitively and intransitively. In Latin, however, you must say, "if they surrendered themselves," because *dedo* is transitive in Latin and must have an object.

²*jungo* is transitive, *Ticinum* being the object.

³*conjungo* is transitive and has *cohortes* for its object.

cum cohortibus legionariis duodecim et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci jubet ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur, ac tantae nationes conjungantur.⁴ 5. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae juxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit ut paulatim sese legiones conjungerent.⁵ 6. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque sese⁶ ei dedituros atque imperata facturos.

⁴Here the intransitive meaning is wanted, and so *conjungantur* is Passive Voice. In English we could say simply, "lest so great tribes should unite," but in Latin you must say either, (a) lest so great tribes be united, or (b) lest so great tribes unite themselves (*sese conjungant*).

⁵"That the legions should gradually unite themselves." Instead of *sese conjungerent*, we might say *conjungerentur*.

⁶Notice that *sese* might be expected twice, once for the Accusative, subject of the Infinitive *dedituros* and again for the Accusative object of the Infinitive, thus: *pollicenturque sese ei sese dedituros*; and they promise that they (*sese*) will surrender themselves (*sese* again) to him. In all such sentences the reflexive is expressed once only. Which one do you think is omitted, subject or object?

Translate into Latin: .

1. Next day they move their camp from that place.
2. Lictors, clear away¹ the crowd. 3. Before the enemy could move from the spot, Caesar crossed the river. 4. When the lictors approached, the rabble moved off.¹ 5. Caesar ordered the inhabitants of the town to surrender their persons and their arms. 6. The Gauls immediately sent ambassadors to Caesar to say that they had not entered into a league against Rome,² and that they had not³ united⁴ with the Germans. 7. Caesar sent word⁵ to the cohorts who had

¹*summoveo*, like *moveo*, is transitive.

²Express the *meaning* as usual.

³Instead of *not . . . and not*, say *neither . . . nor*.

⁴Should you express *se* twice in this sentence?

⁵This is equivalent to a command. Mind your construction.

crossed the river to effect a junction⁶ with the main body. 8. Caesar forbade the Gauls to join the Germans. 9. The mules,⁷ baggage and all,⁸ rolled⁹ down into the valley.

⁶Avoid the abstract noun by using a verb. ⁷*jumentum*.

⁸Say, "along with their loads" (*onus*, *-eris*).

⁹*devolvo* is transitive.

LESSON LXXXVI.

SOME IDIOMS.

1. *Curo* with the Accusative and the Gerundive expresses the idea that somebody is superintending the doing of something: as,

Labienus naves aedificandas esse curat. Labienus sees to (superintends, or urges on) the construction of the ships (lit., takes care that the ships should be built).

2. The Gerundive is often added in a sort of explanatory way: as,

Omnis cetera praeda diripienda data est. All the rest of the booty was given to be plundered.

3. (a) A contrary-to-fact condition in past time is expressed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive followed by the Pluperfect Subjunctive: as,

Nisi nox proelio intervenisset, nemo superfuisset. If night had not put a stop to the battle no one would have survived.

(b) If the above sentence comes under the influence of a verb of speaking, the main clause *nemo superfuisset* becomes, of course, Accusative and Infinitive (*superfuisset* taking the form *superfuturum fuisse*). See Lesson LXX.

Dixit, nisi nox proelio intervenisset, neminem superfuturum fuisse. He said that unless night had put a stop to the battle, no one would have survived.

(c) If instead of a verb requiring the Accusative and Infinitive, a verb requiring the Subjunctive is prefixed, *superfuisset* becomes *superfuturus fuerit*: as,

Tanta erat caedes ut, nisi nox proelio intervenisset, nemo superfuturus fuerit. So great was the slaughter that, unless night had put a stop to the battle, no one would have survived.

N. B.—When the Passive is required, the Gerundive is used: as,

Tanta erat caedes ut, nisi nox proelio intervenisset, nemo conservandus fuerit. So great was the slaughter that, unless night had put a stop to the battle, no one would have been saved.

4. The idea that something was very near happening is expressed thus:

Minimum (or *haud multum*) *aberat quin consul interficeretur.* The consul came within an ace of being killed, narrowly escaped death, was very nearly killed (*lit.*, there was very little wanting but that the consul, etc.).

N. B.—In this construction *abesse* is always impersonal; it has the force of *desse*, and it is followed by *quin* + Subjunctive.

5. Notice also the impersonal *tantum abest*, followed by two *ut* clauses.

Tantum abest ab eo ut malum mors sit, ut verear ne longius vivam. So far is death from being an evil that I fear lest I may live too long (*lit.*, it is so far from this that death is an evil that I, etc.).

Translate into English:

1. Hoc proelio facto, reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat atque ita exercitum traducit. 2. Reliquum exercitum Sabino et Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit. 3. Non dubium fuit quin, nisi firmata extrema agminis fuissent, ingens in eo

saltu accipienda clades fuerit. 4. Eo cum venisset, naves longas invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo quin paucis diebus deduci possent.

Translate into Latin:

1. Caesar ordered the lieutenants whom he had placed in charge of the legions to see to the building of as many ships as possible in the winter, and to look after the repairing of the old ones. 2. Caesar gave three legions to Fabius to take into the territory of the Morini. 3. If the rear had not been strengthened the Romans would have sustained a great disaster. 4. He said that, if the rear had not been strengthened, the Romans would have sustained a great disaster¹ 5. There was no doubt but that, if the rear had not been strengthened, the Romans would have sustained a great disaster. 6. There was no doubt but that, if the rear had not been strengthened, the Romans would have been defeated.² 7. So far am I from doing him an injury³ that I intend⁴ to confer a favour upon him.

¹To sustain a disaster = *cladem accipere*.

²*vinco*. ³Avoid the abstract noun.

⁴Express by the Future Participle of the verb *dare*. Favour = *beneficium*.

LESSON LXXXVII.

THE FIRST AND SECOND PERSON.

1. A verb agrees with the First Person rather than with the Second or Third, and with the Second rather than with the Third: as,

(a) *Ego et tu ire debemus*. You and I ought to go.

(b) *Ego et Caesar ire debemus*. Caesar and I ought to go.

(c) *Tu et Caesar ire debetis*. You and Caesar ought to go.

The order is first, second, third. Do not put the First Person last, as in English.

2. Where there are several subjects the verb may be Plural as above. But the verb may agree with the subject nearest to it: as,

Neither you nor I was present. *Neque ego neque tu aderam*, or *Neque ego aderam neque tu*.

3. Table of Ego (I) and Tu (thou).

	<i>Singular</i>		<i>Plural</i>	
<i>Nom.</i>	ego	tu	nos	vos
<i>Gen.</i>	mei	tui	nostrum or nostri	vestrum or vestri
<i>Dat.</i>	mihi	tibi	nobis	vobis
<i>Acc.</i>	me	te	nos	vos
<i>Abl.</i>	me	te	nobis	vobis

4. There is no third personal pronoun. Its place is supplied by the demonstratives, *hic, ille*, or *is*.

5. There is, however, a reflexive pronoun of the third person, viz.,

Singular and Plural, all genders

Nom. wanting

Gen. sui, of himself, (herself, itself, themselves)

Dat. sibi

Acc. se

Abl. se

N. B.—*Sese* is often used for *se* in the Accusative.

Translate into Latin:

1. Portum intramus ut naves hostium occupemus.
2. Ego¹ et tu in insula hiemabimus.
3. Insulam frequentabas ut frumentum comparares.
4. Cum tu in Britannia abesses, Galli bellum renovaverunt.
5. Praedam in aquam praecipitavimus.
6. Populo persuasisti ut classis centum navium aedificaretur.
7. Terra marique bellum geremus.
8. Cum hostes

¹Personal pronouns must, of course, be expressed when there are more than one subject to the same verb. They are also expressed for contrast or emphasis.

fugaverimus, in castra nos recipiemus. 9. Cum tu et Caesar in Germania abessetis, nos castra muniebamus. 10. Longe a domo bellare non possumus. 11. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui jam primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Varenus. Ili perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de loco summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, "quid dubitas," inquit, "Vorene?² aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis spectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis judicabit."

²O Vorenus. *Vorene* is Vocative Case. The Vocative = the Nominative of Address.

Translate into English:

1. Thou biddest me, O queen, tell thee how Troy fell.
2. If thou wishest to hear of Troy's last toil, although my mind shrinks from the remembrance of it, I shall begin.
3. They build a wooden horse and pretend that it is an offering to Pallas.
4. That report is brought to us.
5. They shut picked bodies of men into the womb of the horse without our knowing it.
6. They launched their ships and sailed to Tenedos.
7. We thought they had gone away to Greece.
8. We open the gates and sally forth to see their deserted camp.
9. We wonder at the hugeness of the horse.
10. Unhappy citizens, think ye the enemy has sailed away to Greece?
11. Put no faith in the horse, Trojans.
12. I fear the Greeks even when offering gifts.
13. If we had listened, Troy would now be standing.
14. Trojan shepherds were dragging a youth before King Priam.
15. I shall not deny, says he, that I am of Greek extraction.
16. Often did the Greeks desire to leave Troy.
17. With the blood of a maiden, O Greeks, ye pacified the winds when first ye came to Trojan shores.
18. I snatched myself from death and burst my bonds.
19. At these tears we grant

him his life. 20. Nor am I bound by any laws of my country. 21. We cleave the walls and lay open the fortifications of the city. 22. Thou shalt go as a messenger to my father. 23. Almighty Jove, if thou art moved by any prayers, grant us thine aid. 24. Thou hast freed the city from danger and the state from fear.

SUPPLEMENTARY EXERCISES.

I.

Use Indirect Narration:

I dare not go without an army into that part of Gaul which is in your hands, and I cannot mobilize my troops without a great deal of trouble. Besides¹, it is a matter of wonder² to me what business³ you have in my part of Gaul⁴ which I have conquered in war.

¹*autem.* ²Say, "it seems wonderful."

³*quid negotii.* ⁴Say, "in my Gaul."

II.

Use Indirect Narration:

And one of the captives said: "What makes you run after this worthless¹ and scanty¹ booty, when you have now a chance² of getting rich?³ In three hours you can reach Aduatuca; there the Roman army has amassed all its treasure;⁴ the garrison is so small that even⁵ the wall cannot be manned,⁶ and no one dares venture outside the fortifications."

¹*miser ac tenuis.* ²*licet.*

³*fortunatissimus.* ⁴*fortuna* in the plural.

⁵Not even, *ne . . . quidem.* ⁶*cingere.*

III.

Use Indirect Narration:

My advice is safe in either event. If there is nothing amiss¹ you will reach the nearest legion without danger; if the whole of Gaul is acting in concert² with

¹*nihil durius.* ²*consentire cum.*

the Germans, your only safety lies³ in speed. As for⁴ the plan of Cotta and those who differ from me, what is likely to be the outcome of it? If there is⁵ no immediate danger to be feared in it,⁶ there is at all events⁷ starvation from a long blockade.

³Passive of *pono*.

⁴Say, "What result (*exitus*) has the plan of Cotta," etc.

⁵Use Gerundive for "is to be feared."

⁶Say, "in which." ⁷*at certe*.

IV.

Use Indirect Narration:

You have to-day, soldiers, the opportunity¹ which you have been seeking: you hold the enemy on difficult and unfavourable ground;² show³ to me, your leader, the same valour which you have often shown to Caesar, your commander-in-chief, and consider that he is present and is watching⁴ everything with his own eyes.⁵

¹*facultas*.

²*locus*.

³*praestare*.

⁴*cernere*.

⁵*coram*.

V.

When Litaviccus¹ was about thirty miles distant from Gergovia, he suddenly called the soldiers together and² with tears in his eyes addressed them as follows: "Where are we going, soldiers? All our cavalry, all our nobility has perished; the chief men of the state, Eporedorix and Viridomarus, have been falsely accused of treason by the Romans and³ put to death without trial.⁴ Learn these facts from the men them-

¹Put the subject in the principal clause and let it be understood in the subordinate clause.

²Get rid of the "and." Latin tends to use subordinate clauses with few principal clauses. See that you do not put "soldiers" in the Ablative Absolute, if you are going to make that word the object of "addressed."

³Omit and use a participle for "accused."

⁴Without trial = *indicta causa* (Abl. Abs.).

selves who have escaped from the midst of the massacre; for, as my brothers and all my relatives have been killed, my grief⁵ prevents me from telling you what has taken place.⁶

⁵You should generally avoid saying that a *thing* performs an act. Say, "I am prevented by my grief."

⁶Passive of *gerere*.

VI.

Towards evening¹ he summoned a council and² exhorted his men to carry out his orders with the greatest care. He put the vessels which he had brought³ from Metiosedum under the charge⁴ of a Roman officer, and gave orders that at the end⁵ of the fourth watch they were to go four miles down stream⁶ in silence and wait for him there.

¹*sub vesperum*.

²Make "put" and "gave" your principal verbs and have all others subordinate.

³Use *ferre* and *portare* for "portable things," otherwise *ducere*. Make appropriate compounds to suit the particular passage.

⁴Use *attribuere* with Accusative and Dative.

⁵Abl. Abs., using participle of *conficere*.

⁶Down stream = *secundo flumine*.

VII.

At¹ daybreak our men had all been conveyed across the river, and the enemy's line was in sight. Sabinus exhorted his men not to forget² their former³ valour and to imagine that Caesar was present in person, under whose leadership⁴ they had often vanquished the foe. Then he gave the signal for battle. On the right wing, where the seventh legion had taken up its position, the enemy were routed on the first encoun-

¹Put the first three sentences into one.

²Use *memoriam retinere*.

³*pristinus*.

⁴*ductus*.

ter⁵ and put to flight. On the left, which was the position held by the tenth legion, the front ranks of the enemy were cut to pieces, yet the others kept up a brave resistance⁶ and not a man⁷ looked in the least inclined to fly. At this juncture, the seventh legion, learning what was taking place on their left, made a detour and advanced to attack the enemy from behind. Even⁸ then not a man⁹ stirred¹⁰ from his place, and so they were all surrounded and slain.

⁵*concursum*. Begin with this word and it will help the connection by referring you back to "battle."

⁶The Imperfect of *resistere* will express the idea.

⁷*et non* = *neque*. Use *nec quisquam* for "and not a man." Put *quisquam* at the end for emphasis.

⁸Not even = *ne . . . quidem*, with emphatic word between.

⁹See 7. ¹⁰*loco cedere*.

VIII.

The Suebi, who were commanded at this time by Ver-gorix, in order to test¹ the minds of the Aedui, sent ambassadors to Dumnorix, their king, with an offer² of peace if he was willing to buy it. Dumnorix scornfully rejected³ the offer,⁴ and in a voice loud enough⁵ to reach the ears of the ambassadors as they withdrew, he boastfully remarked⁶ to his friends that the Suebi were asking for peace through fear of war. When⁷ the embassy returned, the Suebi greeted its report with shouts of laughter,⁸ exclaiming on all sides that Dumnorix would soon find out whether they were consulting their own interests⁹ or his when¹⁰ they offered peace. A¹¹ few days later they engaged in conflict, the Gauls were defeated, and Dumnorix and his officers were slain.

¹*temptare*. ²*deferre*. ³*respuere*.

⁴*condicio*, placed first to help the connection.

⁵Say, "in a voice so loud that," etc. ⁶*gloriari*.

⁷Arrange the next few words so as to get a connecting idea first.

⁸*ridere*, verb; *risus*, noun. ⁹*consulere*, with Dative.

¹⁰*in*, with Gerundive construction.

¹¹Arrange to have only one principal clause.

IX.

The¹ date was now past² on which the beleaguered inhabitants of Alesia had expected aid from their friends. The corn was all consumed, and they had no knowledge of what was going on in the outside world. A council was therefore called for the purpose of considering their plans for the future. Various opinions were expressed. Some were in favour of surrender, others were for a sally while their strength lasted,³ but the motion of Critognatus is worthy of being placed on record⁴ on account of its extraordinary⁵ and diabolical⁶ cruelty. "I move,"⁷ said he, "that we neither surrender nor make a sortie, but that we kill all those who are incapable of active service, and that we live on their bodies until the relieving force arrives."

¹The whole passage should be translated in three sentences, the first ending at "for the future," the second, at "cruelty." The last sentence may be given in direct narration.

²Use *praeterire*. ³*suppetere*.

⁴Express the phrase, "worthy....record," by using the Gerundive of *praeterire*.

⁵*singularis*. ⁶*nefarius*. ⁷*censeo*.

X.

When the news of Caesar's approach reached Pompey's ears he abandoned¹ his intention² of going to Syria, and at once set sail for Egypt. Landing at Pelusium, he applied to Ptolemy for permission to take refuge in Alexandria. In public Ptolemy gave a favourable answer to Pompey's messengers, and invited him to the capital, but in secret he laid a plot against him. Achilles, captain of his guards, a man of unusual daring, and Lucius Septimius, a military tribune, who had once commanded a company under³ Pompey in his war with the pirates, were dispatched with orders to assassinate him. Pompey was easily

• ¹*deponere*. ²*consilium*. ³*apud*.

induced to embark in a small boat⁴ with few attendants, and there Achilles⁵ and Septimius found the opportunity of putting their bloody design into execution.

⁴*navicula parvula.*

⁵The subject and the voice has been changed too often to make a good Latin sentence. It may be advisable to rewrite the whole passage, changing the subject and the voice only when necessary.

XI.

(Extracts from Mommsen's History of Rome.)

To be translated into Latin after the student has read appropriate extracts from Caesar in the original.

1. That year the Helvetic invasion, which had been in preparation for many years, began. That they might not make a grant of their abandoned huts to the Germans, and might render their own return impossible, the Helvetii had burnt their towns and villages; and their long trains of waggons, laden with women, children, and the best part of their movables arrived from all sides at the Leman Lake near Geneva, where they and their comrades had fixed their rendezvous for the 28th of March of this year. According to their own reckoning the whole body consisted of 368,000 persons of whom about a fourth part were able to bear arms. As the mountain-chain of the Jura, stretching from the Rhine to the Rhone, almost completely closed in the Helvetic country on the west, and its narrow defiles were as ill adapted for the passage of such a caravan as they were well adapted for defence, the leaders had resolved to go round in a southerly direction, and to open up for themselves a way to the west at a point where the Rhone has broken through the mountain-chain between the south-western and highest part of the Jura and the Savoy mountains. But on the right bank here the rocks and precipices came so close to the river that there remained only a narrow path which could easily be blocked up, and the Sequani,

to whom this bank belonged, could with ease intercept the route of the Helvetii. They preferred, therefore, to pass over above the point where the Rhine breaks through, to the left Allobrogian bank, with a view of regaining the right bank farther down the stream where the Rhine enters the plain, and then marching on towards the level west of Gaul where the fertile cantons of the Santones on the Atlantic Ocean were selected by the wanderers for their new abode. This march led, where it touched the left bank of the Rhone, through Roman territory; and Caesar, otherwise not disposed to acquiesce in the establishment of the Helvetii in western Gaul, was firmly resolved not to permit their passage. But of his four legions, three were stationed far off at Aquileia; although he called out in haste the militia of the Transalpine province, it seemed scarcely possible with so small a force to hinder the innumerable Celtic host from crossing the Rhone, between its exit from the Lemman lake at Geneva and the point of its breaking through the mountains, a distance of more than fourteen miles. Caesar, however, by negotiations with the Helvetii, who would gladly have effected by peaceable means the crossing of the river and the march through the Allobrogian territory, gained a respite of fifteen days, which was employed in breaking down the bridge over the Rhone at Geneva, and barring the southern bank of the Rhone against the enemy by an entrenchment nearly nineteen miles long; it was the first application of the system, afterwards carried out on so immense a scale by the Romans, of guarding the frontier of the empire in a military point of view by a chain of forts connected with each other by ramparts and ditches. The attempts of the Helvetii to gain the other bank at different places in boats or by means of fords were successfully frustrated by the Romans in these lines, and the Helvetii were compelled to desist from the passage of the Rhone.

On the other hand, the party in Gaul hostile to the

Romans, which hoped to obtain a powerful reinforcement in the Helvetii, more especially the Haeduan Dumnorix, brother of Divitiacus, and at the head of the national party in his canton as the latter was at the head of the Romans, procured for them a passage through the passes of the Jura and the territory of the Sequani. The Romans had no legal title to forbid this; but other and higher interests were at stake for them in the Helvetic expedition than the question of the formal integrity of the Roman territory—interests which could only be defended, if Caesar, instead of confining himself, as all the governors of the senate, and even Marius, had done, to the modest task of watching the frontier, should cross what had hitherto been the frontier at the head of a considerable army. Caesar was general, not of the senate, but of the state; he showed no hesitation. He had immediately proceeded from Geneva in person to Italy, and with characteristic speed brought up the three legions cantoned there, as well as two newly-formed legions of recruits.

These troops he united with the corps stationed at Geneva, and crossed the Rhone with his whole force. His unexpected appearance in the territory of the Haedui naturally at once restored the Roman party to power, which was not unimportant as regarded supplies. He found the Helvetii employed in crossing the Saone, and moving from the territory of the Sequani into that of the Haedui; those of them that were still on the left bank of the Saone, especially the corps of the Tigorini, were caught and destroyed by the Romans rapidly advancing. The bulk of the expedition, however, had already passed to the right bank of the river; Caesar followed them, and effected the passage, which the unwieldy host of the Helvetii had not been able to accomplish in twenty days, in twenty-four hours. The Helvetii, prevented by this passage of the river on the part of the Roman army from continuing their march westward, turned in a northerly direction, doubtless under

the supposition that Caesar would not venture to follow them far into the interior of Gaul, and with the intention, if he should desist from following them, of turning again toward their proper destination. For fifteen days the Roman army marched behind that of the enemy at a distance of about four miles, clinging to its rear, and hoping for an advantageous opportunity of assailing the Helvetian host under conditions favourable to victory, and destroying it. But this moment came not; unwieldy as was the march of the Helvetic caravan, the leaders knew how to guard against a surprise, and appeared to be copiously provided with supplies, as well as most accurately informed through their spies of every event in the Roman camp. On the other hand, the Romans began to suffer from want of necessities, especially when the Helvetii removed from the Saone and the means of river-transport ceased. The non-arrival of the supplies promised by the Haedui, from which this embarrassment primarily arose, excited the more suspicion, as both armies were still moving about in their territory. Moreover, the considerable Roman cavalry, numbering 4,000 horse, proved utterly untrustworthy—which doubtless admitted of explanation, for they consisted almost wholly of Celtic horsemen, especially of the mounted retainers of the Haedui, under the command of Dumnorix, the well-known enemy of the Romans, and Caesar had taken them more as hostages than as soldiers. There was good reason to believe that a defeat which they suffered at the hands of the far weaker Helvetian cavalry was occasioned by themselves, and that the enemy was informed by them of all occurrences in the Roman camp. The position of Caesar grew critical: it was becoming disagreeably evident how much the Celtic patriotic party could effect even with the Haedui in spite of their official alliance with Rome, and of the distinctive interests of this canton inclining it towards the Romans; what was to be the issue if they ventured deeper and deeper into a

country full of excitement, and removed daily farther from their means of communication? The armies were just marching past Bibracte, the capital of the Haedui, at a moderate distance; Caesar resolved to seize this important place by force before he continued his march into the interior, and it is very possible that he intended to desist altogether from further pursuit and to establish himself in Bibracte. But when he ceased from the pursuit and turned against Bibracte, the Helvetii thought that the Romans were making preparations for flight, and now attacked in their turn.

Caesar desired nothing better. The two armies posted themselves on two parallel chains of hills; the Celts began the engagement, broke the Roman cavalry which advanced into the plain, and ran onward against the Roman legions posted on the slope of the hill, but were there obliged to give way before Caesar's veterans. When the Romans thereupon, following up their advantage, descended in their turn to the plain, the Celts again advanced against them, and a reserved Celtic corps took them at the same time in flank. The reserve of the Roman attacking column was pushed forward against the latter; it forced it away from the main body upon the baggage and the barricade of waggons, where it was destroyed. The bulk of the Helvetic host was at length brought to give way, and compelled to beat a retreat in an easterly direction—the opposite of that towards which their expedition led them. This day had frustrated the scheme of the Helvetii to establish for themselves new settlements on the Atlantic Ocean, and handed them over to the pleasure of the victor; but it had been a hot day also for the conquerors. Caesar, who had reason for not altogether trusting his staff of officers, had at the very outset sent away all the officers' horses, so as to make the necessity of holding their ground thoroughly clear to his troops; in fact the battle, had the Romans lost it, would have probably occasioned the annihilation of the Roman army. The

Roman troops were too much exhausted to pursue the conquered with vigour; but in consequence of the proclamation of Caesar that he would treat all who should support the Helvetii as, like the Helvetii themselves, enemies of the Romans, all support was refused to the beaten army whithersoever it went, and, deprived of their baggage and burdened by a mass of camp-followers incapable of fighting, they were under the necessity of submitting to the Roman general.

The lot of the vanquished was a comparatively mild one. The Haedui were directed to concede settlements in their territory to the homeless Boii; and this settlement of the conquered foe in the midst of the most powerful Celtic cantons rendered almost the services of a Roman colony. The survivors of the Helvetii and Rauraci, something more than a third of the men that had marched forth, were naturally sent back to their former territory, to defend, under Roman supremacy, the frontier along the upper Rhine against the Germans.

2. Thus the threatening invasion of the Germans on the upper Rhine was obviated, and, at the same time, the party hostile to the Romans among the Celts was humbled. On the middle Rhine also, where the Germans had already crossed years ago, and where the power of Ariovistus, which vied with that of Rome in Gaul, was daily spreading, there was need of similar action, and the occasion for a rupture was easily found. In comparison with the yoke threatened or already imposed on them by Ariovistus, the Roman supremacy probably now appeared to the greater part of the Celts in this quarter the lesser evil; the minority, who retained their hatred of the Romans, had at least to keep silence. A diet of the Celtic tribes of central Gaul, held under Roman influence, requested the Roman general in the name of the Celtic nation for aid against the Germans. Caesar consented. At his suggestion the

Haedui stopped the payment of the tribute stipulated to be paid to Ariovistus, and demanded back the hostages furnished; and when Ariovistus on account of this breach of treaty attacked the clients of Rome, Caesar took occasion thereby to enter into direct negotiation with him, and specially to demand, in addition to the return of the hostages and a promise to keep peace with the Haedui, that Ariovistus should bind himself to allure no more Germans over the Rhine. The German general replied to the Roman in the full consciousness of equal power and equal right, that northern Gaul had become subject to him by right of war as fairly as southern Gaul to the Romans: and that as he did not hinder the Romans from taking tribute from the Allobroges, so they should not prevent him from taxing his subjects. In later secret overtures it appeared that the prince was well aware of the circumstances of the Romans; he mentioned the invitations which had been addressed to him from Rome to put Caesar out of the way, and offered, if Caesar would leave to him northern Gaul, to assist him in turn to obtain the sovereignty of Italy.

3. Caesar sent Labienus with all the cavalry to the Rhine, with a view to hold in check the agitation in the Belgic province, and in case of need to prevent the Germans from crossing the river; another of the lieutenants, Quintus Titurius Sabinus, went with three legions to Normandy, where the main body of the insurgents assembled. But the powerful and intelligent Veneti were the true centre of the insurrection; the chief attack by land and sea was directed against them. Caesar's lieutenant, Decimus Brutus, brought up the fleet formed partly of the ships of the subject Celtic cantons, partly of a number of Roman galleys hastily built on the Loire and manned with rowers from the Narbonese province; Caesar himself advanced with the flower of his infantry into the territory of the Veneti.

But these were prepared beforehand, and had with equal skill and resolution availed themselves of the favourable circumstances which the nature of the ground in Brittany and the possession of a considerable naval power presented. The country was much intersected and poorly furnished with grain, the towns were situated for the most part on cliffs and tongues of land, and were accessible from the mainland only by shoals which it was difficult to cross; the provision of supplies and the conducting of sieges were equally difficult for the army attacking by land, while the Celts by means of their vessels could furnish the towns easily with everything needful, and in the event of the worst could accomplish their evacuation. The legions expended their time and strength in the sieges of the Venetian towns, only to see the substantial fruits of victory ultimately carried off in the vessels of the enemy.

Accordingly, when the Roman fleet, long detained by storms at the mouth of the Loire, arrived at length on the coast of Brittany, it was left to decide the struggle by a naval battle. The Celts, conscious of their superiority on the sea, brought forth their fleet against that of the Romans commanded by Brutus. Not only did it number 220 sail, far more than the Romans had been able to bring up, but their high-built, strong sailing-vessels with flat bottoms were also far better adapted for the high-running waves of the Atlantic Ocean than the low, lightly-built oared galleys of the Romans with their sharp keels. Neither the missiles nor the boarding bridges of the Romans could reach the high deck of the enemy's vessels, and the iron beaks recoiled powerless from the strong oaken planks. But the Roman mariners cut the ropes by which the yards were fastened to the masts: the yards and sails fell down, and as the ships were thus rendered incapable of motion, the Roman boats easily succeeded by a joint attack in mastering the maimed vessels of the enemy one at a

time. When the Gauls perceived this manœuvre, they attempted to move from the coast on which they had taken up the combat with the Romans, and to gain the high seas, whither the Roman galleys could not follow them; but unhappily for them there suddenly set in a dead calm, and the immense fleet, toward the equipment of which the maritime cantons had applied all their energies, was almost wholly destroyed by the Romans.

4. To gain communication with Spain, moreover, Publius Crassus was sent in the following year to Aquitania with instructions to compel the Iberian tribes dwelling there to acknowledge the Roman rule. The task was not without difficulty; the Iberians were united more compactly than the Celts and knew better how to learn from their enemies. The tribes beyond the Pyrenees, especially the valiant Cantrabi, sent a contingent to their threatened countrymen. With this there came experienced officers trained under the leadership of Sertorius in the Roman fashion, who introduced as far as possible the principles of the Roman art of war, and especially of encampment, among the Aquitanian levy, already respectable from its numbers and its valour. But the excellent officer who led the Romans knew how to surmount all difficulties, and after some hardly contested but successful battles he induced the peoples from the Garonne to the vicinity of the Pyrenees to submit to the new master.

5. Now that all Gaul had been reduced to peace, there still remained the insular Celts. From the close connection between them and the Celts of the continent, especially the maritime cantons, it may readily be conceived that they had at least sympathized with the national resistance; and if they did not grant armed assistance to the patriots, they gave at any rate an honourable asylum in their sea-protected isle to every one who was no longer safe in his native land. This cer-

tainly involved a danger, if not for the present, at any rate for the future; it seemed judicious—if not to undertake the conquest of the island itself—at any rate to conduct there also defensive operations by offensive means, and to show the islanders by a landing on the coast that the arm of the Romans reached even across the channel. Accordingly Caesar set out for Britain in person with two legions. He found the coast covered with masses of the enemy's troops and sailed onward with his vessels; but the British war-chariots moved on quite as fast by land as the Roman galleys by sea, and it was only with the utmost difficulty that the Roman soldiers succeeded in gaining the shore in the face of the enemy, partly by wading, partly in boats, under the protection of the ships of war, which swept the beach with missiles thrown from machines and by the hand. In the first alarm the nearest villages submitted, but the islanders soon perceived how weak the enemy was, and how he did not venture to move far from the shore. The natives disappeared into the interior and returned only to threaten the camp; and the fleet, which had been left in the open roads, suffered very considerable damage from the first tempest that burst upon it. The Romans had to reckon themselves fortunate in repelling the attacks of the barbarians till they had bestowed the necessary repairs on the ships, and in regaining with these the Gallic coast before the bad season of the year came on.

6. Caesar himself was so dissatisfied with the results of this expedition undertaken inconsiderately and with inadequate means, that he immediately ordered a transport fleet of 800 sail to be fitted out, and sailed a second time for the Kentish coast, on this occasion with five legions and 2,000 cavalry. The forces of the Britons, assembled this time also on the shore, retired before the mighty armada without risking a battle; Caesar immediately set out on his march into the interior, and after

some successful conflicts crossed the river Stour; but he was obliged to halt, very much against his will, because the fleet in the open roads had been again half destroyed by the storms of the Channel. Before they got the ships drawn up upon the beach and the extensive arrangements made for their repair, precious time was lost, which the Celts wisely turned to account.

The brave and cautious prince, Cassivellaunus, who ruled in what is now Middlesex and the surrounding district—formerly the terror of the Celts to the south of the Thames, but now the protector and champion of the whole nation—had headed the defence of the land. He soon saw that nothing at all could be done with the Celtic infantry against the Roman, and that the mass of the general levy—which it was difficult to feed and difficult to control—was only a hindrance to the defence; he therefore dismissed it and retained only the war-chariots, in which the warriors, accustomed to leap down from their chariots and fight on foot, could be employed either as cavalry or infantry. When Caesar was once more able to continue his march, he met with no more interruption to it; but the British war-chariots moved always in front and alongside of the Roman army, induced the evacuation of the country, prevented the sending out of detachments, and threatened the communications. The danger to the Romans increased with every onward step, and the attack, which the princes of Kent by the orders of Cassivellaunus made on the Roman naval camp, although it was repulsed, was an urgent warning to turn back.

7. The winter was drawing to a close when Caesar set out with his army, which meanwhile had been considerably reinforced, against the insurgents. The attempts of the Treveri to concentrate the revolt had not succeeded; the agitated districts were kept in check by the marching in of the Roman troops, and those in open rebellion were attacked in detail. First the Nervii

were routed by Caesar in person. The Carnutes and the Senones met the same fate. The Menapii, the only canton which had never submitted to the Romans, were compelled by a grand attack simultaneously directed against them from three sides to renounce their long-preserved freedom. Labienus meanwhile was preparing the same fate for the Treveri. Their first attack had been paralysed, partly by the refusal of the adjoining German tribes to furnish them with mercenaries, partly by the fact that Indutiomarus, the soul of the whole movement, had fallen in a skirmish with the cavalry of Labienus. But they did not on this account abandon their projects. With their whole force they appeared in front of Labienus and waited for the German bands that were to follow, for their recruiting agents found a better reception than they had met with from the dwellers on the Rhine, among the warlike tribes of the interior of Germany. But when Labienus seemed as if he wished to avoid these and to march off in all haste, the Treveri attacked the Romans even before the Germans arrived and in a most unfavourable spot, and were completely defeated.

8. Labienus moved from Agendicum up the left bank of the Seine with a view to possess himself of Lutetia, a town of the Parisii situated on an island in the Seine, and from this well-secured position in the heart of the insurgent country to reduce it again to subjection. But behind Melodunum he found his route barred by the whole army of the insurgents, which had here taken up a position between unassailable morasses, under the leadership of the aged Camulogenus. Labienus retreated a certain distance, crossed the Seine at Melodunum, and moved up its right bank unhindered towards Lutetia; Camulogenus caused this town to be burnt and the bridges leading to the left bank to be broken down, and took up a position over against Labienus in which the latter could neither bring him to battle nor effect a passage under the eyes of the hostile army.

APPENDIX.

THE VERB.

ACTIVE VOICE.

1. Learn by heart the Future Indicative and Present Subjunctive of the four Conjugations:

	<i>Future Indicative.</i>	<i>Present Subjunctive.</i>
1st Conj.	amabo	amem
2nd Conj.	monebo	moneam
3rd Conj.	regam	regam
4th Conj.	audiam	audiam

2. Set down the principal parts of the verb to be conjugated :

laudo	laudare	laudavi	laudatum
-------	---------	---------	----------

3. Next make out the skeleton of the table for all Moods and Tenses thus :

	laudo	laudare		laudavi	laudatum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>		<i>Pf.</i>		
	{ <i>Impf.</i>		<i>Plpf.</i>		
	{ <i>Fut.</i>		<i>Ftperf.</i>		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>		<i>Pf.</i>		
	{ <i>Impf.</i>		<i>Plpf.</i>		
<i>Imper. Pres.</i>					
<i>Infinit. Pres.</i>			<i>Pf.</i>		<i>Fut.</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>			<i>Pf.</i>		<i>Fut.</i>
<i>Gerund</i>					

4. Fill in the Future Indicative and the Present Subjunctive which have been learned from Note 1, and the Present Indicative, Present Infinitive and Perfect Indicative which are given in the principal parts :

	laudo	laudare		laudavi	laudatum
<i>Indic.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>	laudo	<i>Pf.</i>	laudavi	
	{ <i>Impf.</i>		<i>Plpf.</i>		
	{ <i>Fut.</i>	laudabo	<i>Ftperf.</i>		
<i>Subj.</i>	{ <i>Pres.</i>	laudem	<i>Pf.</i>		
	{ <i>Impf.</i>		<i>Plpf.</i>		
<i>Imper. Pres.</i>					
<i>Infinit. Pres.</i>		laudare	<i>Pf.</i>		<i>Fut.</i>
<i>Part. Pres.</i>			<i>Pf.</i>		<i>Fut.</i>
<i>Gerund</i>					

5. Cut off *re* from the Present Infinitive and write down the remainder in every blank space of the first column. Cut off *i* from the Perfect

and write down the remainder in every blank space in the second column, except where the Tense is wanting :

	laudo	lauda re		laudav i		laudatum
	{ Pres.	laudo		Pf.	laudavi	
Indic.	{ Impf.	lauda		Plpf.	laudav	
	{ Fut.	laudabo		Ftpf.	laudav	
Subj.	{ Pres.	laudem		Pf.	laudav	
	{ Impf.	lauda		Plpf.	laudav	
Imper. Pres.		lauda				
Infín. Pres.		lauda		Pf.	laudav	Fut.
Part. Pres.		lauda		Pf.	(wanting)	Fut.
Gerund		lauda				

6. Add the endings and complete the verb by writing down the Future Participle and Future Infinitive :

	laudo	lauda re		laudav i		laudat um
	{ Pres.	laudo		Pf.	laudavi	
Indic.	{ Impf.	laudabam		Plpf.	laudaveram	
	{ Fut.	laudabo		Ftpf.	laudavero	
Subj.	{ Pres.	laudem		Pf.	laudaverim	
	{ Impf.	laudarem		Plpf.	laudavissem	
Imper. Pres.		lauda				
Infín. Pres.		laudare		Pf.	laudavisse	Fut. laudaturus esse
Part. Pres.		laudans		Pf.	(wanting)	Fut. laudaturus
Gerund		laudandi				

7. Next take the verb *rego* and conjugate step by step as shown in the case of *laudo* :

	rego	rege re		rex i		rect um
	{ Pres.	rego		Pf.	rex	
Indic.	{ Impf.	rege		Plpf.	rex	
	{ Fut.	regam		Ftpf.	rex	
Subj.	{ Pres.	regam		Pf.	rex	
	{ Impf.	rege		Plpf.	rex	
Imper. Pres.		rege				
Infín. Pres.		regere		Pf.		Fut.
Part. Pres.		regere		Pf.		Fut.
Gerund		regere				

	rego	rege re		rex i		rect um
	{ Pres.	rego		Pf.	rex	
Indic.	{ Impf.	rege		Plpf.	rex	
	{ Fut.	regam		Ftpf.	rex	
Subj.	{ Pres.	regam		Pf.	rex	
	{ Impf.	rege		Plpf.	rex	
Imper. Pres.		rege				
Infín. Pres.		regere		Pf.	rex	Fut. rect
Part. Pres.		rege		Pf.	(wanting)	Fut. rect
Gerund		rege				

	rego	regere		rex		rectum
	{ Pres.	rego		Pf.	rex	
Indic.	{ Impf.	regebam		Plpf.	rexeram	
	{ Fut.	regam		Ftpf.	rexero	
Subj.	{ Pres.	regam		Pf.	rexerim	
	{ Impf.	regerem		Plpf.	rexissem	

<i>Imper. Pres.</i>	rege			
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	regere	<i>Pf.</i>	rexisse	<i>Fut.</i> recturus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>	regens	<i>Pf.</i>	(wanting)	<i>Fut.</i> recturus
<i>Gerund</i>	regendi			

8. In the fourth Conjugation the spelling of the Imperfect Indicative, the Present Participle, and the Gerund has to be particularly observed—*audiebam, audiens, audiendi*.

9. Irregular verbs will be learned by simply noticing the parts which do not follow the above scheme. There are *never* any irregularities in the second column.

RULES FOR CONJUGATING THE TENSES.

1. The Perfect is unlike the other Tenses. Learn it by heart :

<i>Sing.</i>	1. rex	i	tul	i (<i>perf. of fero</i>)
	2. rex	isti	tul	isti
	3. rex	it	tul	it
<i>Pl.</i>	1. rex	imus	tul	imus
	2. rex	istis	tul	istis
	3. rex	erunt (<i>or ere</i>)	tul	erunt (<i>or ere</i>)

2. Learn the endings for the other Tenses :

<i>Sing.</i>	1. —mus	<i>Pl.</i>	1. —mus
	2. —s		2. —tis
	3. —t		3. —nt

3. The next question is, what vowel precedes these endings ?

(a) When a Tense ends in *m*, use the vowel before the *m*, except in the Future Indicative 3rd and 4th Conjugations where *a* changes to *e* :

<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Impf. Indic.</i>	<i>Pf. Subj.</i>	<i>Pres. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut. Indic.</i>
amem	audiebam	rexerim	regam	regam
es	as	is	as	es
et	at	it	at	et
emus	amus	imus	amus	emus
etis	atis	itis	atis	etis
ent	ant	int	ant	ent

(b) When a Tense ends in *o*, it must be Future Perfect Indicative, Future Indicative of the 1st or 2nd Conjugations, or Present Indicative.

For the Future Perfect the vowel is always *i* : *rexero, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -int*.

For the Future of the 1st or 2nd Conjugation the vowel is *i* with *u* in the 3rd Plural : *laudabo, -is, -it, -imus, -itis, -unt*.

In the Present Indicative the vowel for the 1st Conjugation is *a*, for the 2nd Conjugation *e*, for the 3rd Conjugation *i* with *u* in the 3rd Plural, and for the 4th Conjugation *i* with *u* in the 3rd Plural :

<i>Pres. Indic. 1st Conj.</i>	<i>2nd</i>	<i>3rd</i>	<i>4th</i>
laudo	moneo	rego	audio
as	es	is	is
at	et	it	it
amus	emus	imus	imus
atis	etis	itis	itis
ant	ent	unt	iunt

COMPLETE VIEW OF THE VERB.

Active Voice.

	rego	regere		rexī		rectum
	<i>Pres.</i>	rego	<i>Pf.</i>	rexī, -istī, -it, -imus, -istis, -erunt		(or ere)
<i>Indic.</i>	{	<i>Impf.</i>	regebam	{	<i>Plpf.</i>	rexeram
			(i, u)			(a)
		<i>Fut.</i>	regam		<i>Ftpf.</i>	rexero
			(e)			(i)
<i>Subj.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i>	regam	{	<i>Pf.</i>	rexerim
			(a)			(i)
		<i>Impf.</i>	regerem		<i>Plpf.</i>	rexissem
			(e)			(e)
<i>Imper.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i>	rege (2nd Pl.,			
			(i) [regite]			
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		regere	<i>Pf.</i>	rexisse	<i>Fut.</i>	recturus esse
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		regens	<i>Pf.</i>	(wanting)	<i>Fut.</i>	recturus, -a, -um
<i>Gerund</i>		regendi, -o, -um, -o				

Passive Voice.

1. The table of the Passive Voice is as follows, and it may be learnt in the same way :

	amo	amare		amavi		amatum
	<i>Pres.</i>	amor	<i>Pf.</i>	amatus sum		
<i>Indic.</i>	{	<i>Impf.</i>	amabar	{	<i>Plpf.</i>	amatus eram
		<i>Fut.</i>	amabor		<i>Ftpf.</i>	amatus ero
<i>Subj.</i>	{	<i>Pres.</i>	amer	{	<i>Pf.</i>	amatus sim
		<i>Impf.</i>	amarer		<i>Plpf.</i>	amatus essem
<i>Imper. Pres.</i>		amare				
<i>Infin. Pres.</i>		amari	<i>Pf.</i>	amatus esse	<i>Fut.</i>	amatum iri
<i>Part. Pres.</i>		(wanting)	<i>Pf.</i>	amatus		
<i>Gerundive</i>		amandus				

2. To obtain the different persons of the Tenses in the second column, conjugate the word *sum*, and change the Participle *amatus* to agree with the subject—*amata*, *amati*, *amatae*, etc.

3. To obtain the different persons of the Tenses in the first column, substitute the Passive endings for the Active endings. They are as follows :

<i>Sing.</i>	{	1. —	<i>Pl.</i>	{	1. —mur
		2. —ris			2. —mini
		3. —tur			3. —ntur

The vowel is the same in the Passive as in the Active, except in the 2nd Singular Present Indicative of the 3rd Conjugation, and in the 2nd Singular Future Indicative of the 1st and 2nd Conjugations.

<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	<i>Impf. Subj.</i>	<i>Fut. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Indic.</i>
<i>1st Conj.</i>		<i>2nd Conj.</i>	<i>3rd Conj.</i>
amor	audirer	monebor	regor
aris	eris	eris	eris
atur	etur	itur	itur
amur	emur	imur	imur
amini	emini	imini	imini
antur	entur	untur	untur

THE NOUN.

FIRST DECLENSION.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> silva (f.)	silvae
<i>Gen.</i> silvae	silvarum
<i>Dat.</i> silvae	silvis
<i>Acc.</i> silvam	silvas
<i>Abl.</i> silva	silvis

SECOND DECLENSION.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> murus (m.)	muri
<i>Gen.</i> muri	murorum
<i>Dat.</i> muro	muris
<i>Acc.</i> murum	muros
<i>Abl.</i> muro	muris
<i>Nom.</i> ager (m.)	agri
<i>Gen.</i> agri	agrorum
<i>Dat.</i> agro	agris
<i>Acc.</i> agrum	agros
<i>Abl.</i> agro	agris
<i>Nom.</i> puer (m.)	pueri
<i>Gen.</i> pueri	puerorum
<i>Dat.</i> puero	pueris
<i>Acc.</i> puerum	pueros
<i>Abl.</i> puero	pueris
<i>Nom.</i> bellum (n.)	bella
<i>Gen.</i> belli	bellorum
<i>Dat.</i> bello	bellis
<i>Acc.</i> bellum	bella
<i>Abl.</i> bello	bellis
<i>Nom.</i> vir (m.)	viri
<i>Gen.</i> viri	virorum (virum)
<i>Dat.</i> viro	viris
<i>Acc.</i> virum	viros
<i>Abl.</i> viro	viris

THIRD DECLENSION.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> miles (m.)	milites
<i>Gen.</i> militis	militum
<i>Dat.</i> militi	militibus
<i>Acc.</i> militem	milites
<i>Abl.</i> milite	militibus
<i>Nom.</i> lex (f.)	leges
<i>Gen.</i> legis	legum
<i>Dat.</i> legi	legibus
<i>Acc.</i> legem	leges
<i>Abl.</i> lege	legibus
<i>Nom.</i> opus (n.)	opera
<i>Gen.</i> operis	operum
<i>Dat.</i> operi	operibus
<i>Acc.</i> opus	opera
<i>Abl.</i> opere	operibus

Most nouns ending in *-es* or *-is*, not increasing a syllable in the Genitive Singular, have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural :

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> nubes (f.)	nubes
<i>Gen.</i> nubis	nubium
<i>Dat.</i> nubi	nubibus
<i>Acc.</i> nubem	nubes
<i>Abl.</i> nube	nubibus
<i>Nom.</i> hostis (m.)	hostes (is)
<i>Gen.</i> hostis	hostium
<i>Dat.</i> hosti	hostibus
<i>Acc.</i> hostem	hostes (is)
<i>Abl.</i> hoste	hostibus

Most nouns in *-s* or *-x*, preceded by a consonant, have *-ium* in the Genitive Plural :

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> mons (m.)	montes
<i>Gen.</i> montis	montium
<i>Dat.</i> monti	montibus
<i>Acc.</i> montem	montes
<i>Abl.</i> monte	montibus

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> vis (f.) (force, violence, might)	vires (strength)
<i>Gen.</i> ———	virium
<i>Dat.</i> ———	viribus
<i>Acc.</i> vim	vires
<i>Abl.</i> vi	viribus

N.B.—*Mare* (n.), the sea, has *-i* in the Ablative Singular, and *-ia* in the Nominative and Accusative Plural. The Genitive Plural is *-um*, but it is seldom found. *Ignis*, fire, and *navis*, a ship, have *-i* in the Ablative Singular.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> passus (m.)	passus
<i>Gen.</i> passus	passuum
<i>Dat.</i> passui (u)	passibus
<i>Acc.</i> passum	passus
<i>Abl.</i> passu	passibus

N.B.—*Domus* (f.), a house, has the Ablative Singular and the Accusative Plural like the 2nd Declension—*domo*, *domos*. *Domi* (also *domui*) is used as an adverb, meaning “at home.” A few words have *-ubus* instead of *-ibus* in the Dative and Ablative Plural.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural</i>
<i>Nom.</i> res (f.)	res
<i>Gen.</i> rei	rerum
<i>Dat.</i> rei	rebus
<i>Acc.</i> rem	res
<i>Abl.</i> re	rebus
<i>Nom.</i> dies (m.)	dies
<i>Gen.</i> diei	dierum
<i>Dat.</i> diei	diebus
<i>Acc.</i> diem	dies
<i>Abl.</i> die	diebus

N.B.—In Genitive and Dative Singular *ē* is found for *ei*, in the Genitive also *i*.

Vocative and Locative Cases.

A case called the Vocative is used like the Nominative of Address in English. Its termination is the same as that of the Nominative, except with nouns of the 2nd Declension ending in *-us*, which have *-e*. Proper names and some common nouns in *-ius* contract *ie* of the Vocative into *i*: as, *Horatius, Horati*; *filius, fili*. *Deus* has *deus* in the Vocative.

Still another case is the Locative, which gives the idea of *place where*. Some examples are: *domi* (at home), *ruri* (in the country), *Romae* (at Rome), *Corinthis* (at Corinth).

DECLENSION OF THE ADJECTIVE.

Adjectives take the terminations of the Declension to which they belong, but adjectives of the 3rd Declension have *-i* in the Ablative Singular instead of *-e*, *-ium* in the Genitive Plural instead of *-um*, and *-ia* in the Nominative and Accusative Neuter instead of *-a*.

N.B.—Adjectives in the comparative degree and *vetus* (old) have *-e* in the Ablative Singular, *-um* in the Genitive Plural, and *-a* in the Nominative and Accusative Plural Neuter. Present Participles, used as Participles, generally take *-e* in the Ablative Singular; but they prefer *-i* when used as epithets.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

	<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
<i>Regular</i>	audax	audacior	audacissimus
	utilis	utilior	utilissimus
	prudens	prudenter	prudenter
<i>-er</i>	acer	acrior	acerrimus
	miser	miserior	miserrimus
<i>A few in</i>	facilis	facilior	facillimus
	difficilis	difficilior	difficillimus
<i>Irregular</i>	bonus	melior	optimus
	malus	pejor	pessimus
	magnus	major	maximus
	parvus	minor	minimus
	multus	plus (<i>n.</i>)	plurimus
	superus	superior	supremus, summus
		prior	primus
		propior	proximus

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

<i>Positive</i>	<i>Comparative</i>	<i>Superlative</i>
longe	longius	longissime
acriter	acrius	acerrime
facile	facilius	facillime

DECLENSION OF PRONOUNS.

See pages 141, 152, 153, 154, 227.

GENERAL VOCABULARY.

Short vowels and vowels long by position are not marked. Diphthongs are always long. The student should mark the quantities in the special vocabularies for himself.

A

a, ab, prep. with abl. (**a** before consonants ; **ab** before vowels and some consonants), from, **at** a distance of ; **by** ; on the side of.

ab-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, hide.

abi-ēs, -etis, F., fir.

ab-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw away.

absens, -entis, absent, away, being away.

absimilis, e, unlike.

ab-sistō, ere, -stitī, keep away.

absum, abesse, afuī, be absent, be distant.

ac (*shorter form for atque, used only before consonants*), and.

ac-cēdo, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go to ; be added.

acceptus, a, um, adj., acceptable.

ac-cidō, ere, -cidī, happen, occur.

ac-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, receive ; hear (*receive by the ear*).

accūso, āre, āvī, ātum, accuse.

ācer, eris, ere, sharp, shrewd, eager.

aciēs, ēī, F., edge, line, line of battle, battle.

ācriter, adv. (*acrius. acerrime*), spiritedly ; eagerly ; actively.

actuārius, a, um, light, swift.

acūtus, a, um, sharp, pointed.

ad, prep. with acc., to, towards, for ; near ; until.

adaequō, āre, āvī, ātum, equal.

ad-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, add.

ad-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead, induce.

adeō, adv., so, so much.

adeō, Ire -iī, -itum, go to, visit, attack.

adeptus, a, um, from adipiscor.

adhibeō, ēre, uī, itum, call in, bring along.

adhortor, ārī, ātus sum, encourage.

ad-imo, ere, -ēmī, -emptum, take away, destroy.

ad-ipiscor, ī, -eptus sum, obtain, gain.

aditus, ūs, M., approach, access, means of approach.

- ad-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw to, against.
 ad-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, join to.
 ad-juvō, āre, -jūvī, -jūtum, assist.
 administrō, āre, āvī, ātum, execute, manage.
 ad-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, incur ; commit.
 admodum, *adv.*, very.
 ad-orior, Irī, -ortus sum, attack.
 ad-sum, -esse, -fuī, be near, be present.
 adulescens, -entis, M., young man.
 adulescentia, ae, F., youth.
 advena, ae, M. and F., a stranger.
 adventus, ūs, M., arrival.
 adversum or adversus, *prep. with acc.*, against.
 adversus, a, um, opposite, unsuccessful.
 ad-vertō, ere, -vertī, -versum, turn towards ; **animum ad-
 verto**, observe.
 advolō, āre, āvī, ātum, fly to, rush upon.
 aedēs, is, F., (*sing.*) temple ; (*plur.*) house.
 aedificium, i, N., building.
 aedificō, āre, āvī, ātum, build, construct, arrange.
 Aeduus, i, M., an Aeduan ; *in plur.*, the Aedui, *a tribe of Gaul.*
 aegrē, *adv.* (aegrius, aegerrime), scarcely, with difficulty.
 aes, aeris, N., bronze, copper ; money.
 aestās, -tātis, F., summer.
 aestimō, āre, āvī, ātum, estimate ; think.
 aestus, ūs, M., tide.
 aetās, -tātis, F., age, years, time.
 afferō, afferre, attulī, allātum, bring, cause.
 af-ficio, ere, fēcī, -fectum, visit with ; affect, be troubled.
 affirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, assert.
 afflicto, āre, āvī, ātum, damage, wreck.
 afflictus, a, um, *from affligo*.
 af-fligo, ere, -flixī, -flictum, strike down, shatter.
 Africa, ae, F., Africa.
 Africus, i, M., Africus, *the south-west wind*.
 ager, agri, M., field, land.
 agger, -eris, M., mound, rampart.
 ag-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, attack.
 aggregō, āre, āvī, ātum, attach, join.
 agmen, -minis, N., army on the march ; **primum agmen**, the
 van ; **novissimum agmen**, the rear.
 agō, ere, ēgī, actum, drive ; do, carry on ; thank.
 agricola, ae, M., farmer.
 alacritās, -tātis, F., eagerness.
 albus, a, um, white.
 aliēnus, a, um, belonging to another ; disadvantageous.

- aliquantus**, a, um, some ; *neut. as subst.*, a considerable part.
aliquis, quid, some one, something.
aliquot, *adj.*, *indeclinable*, several, some, a few.
aliter, *adv.*, otherwise.
alius, a, ud, other, another ; different ; **alius** . . . **alius**, one, . . . another ; **alii** . . . **alii**, some . . . others.
allātus, a, um, *from affero*.
alō, ere, aluī, altum (alitur), nourish ; maintain ; increase.
alter, era, erum, the one, another (*of two*) ; second ; **alter** . . . **alter**, the one . . . the other.
altitūdō, -dinis, F., depth ; height.
altus, a, um, high ; deep.
ambulō, āre, āvī, ātum, walk.
āmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.
amicē, *adv.*, in a friendly manner.
amicitia, ae, F., friendship, alliance.
amicus, a, um, friendly.
amicus, I, M., friend, ally.
amissus, a, um, *from amitto*.
a-mittō, ere, -misi, -misum, lose.
amplius, *adv. comparative of amplē*, more, further ; more than.
ān, *conj.*, or, *introducing the second part of an alternative question*.
an-ceps, -cipitis, double ; doubtful.
ancora, ae, F., anchor.
angulus, I, M., corner, angle.
angustē, *adv.*, closely.
angustiae, arum, F., *plur.*, narrows, straits, narrow pass.
angustus, a, um, narrow, steep.
anima, ae, F., life.
animadver-tō, ere, -ti, -sum, notice, observe, perceive.
animus, i, M., soul, mind, heart, spirit, courage.
annus, i, M., year
annuus, a, um, a year's, for a year.
ante, (1) *adv.* before, formerly, (2) *prep. with acc.*, before.
anteā, *adv.*, before, previously.
ante-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, go before, precede ; surpass.
ante-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place before, prefer.
antiquus, a, um, old, ancient.
aper-iō, ire, -ui, -tum, open ; disclose, reveal.
apertus, a, um, *adj.*, open, exposed.
appāreō, ēre, ui, itum, appear.
appellō, āre, āvi, ātum, call ; address.
ap-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, bring to land.
appeto, ere, Ivi (ii), itum, to seek after eagerly.
apportō, āre, āvi, ātum, bring.

appropinquō, āre, āvī, ātum, approach (*with dat.*).

aptus, a, um, suited, fitted.

apud, prep. with acc., at, among, near, in the presence of ; **at** the house of.

aqua, ae, F., water.

aquātiō, -ōnis, F., getting water.

aquila, ae, F., eagle, standard of a Roman legion.

aquilifer, eri, M., standard-bearer.

āra, ae, F. altar.

Ar-ar, -aris, M., the Arar, *a river in Gaul.*

arbitr, tri, M., arbitrator.

arbitrium, i, N., will, judgment.

arbitror, ārī, ātus sum, think, judge.

arbor, -oris, F., tree.

arcess-ō, ere, -ivī, -itum, summon, send for.

arduus, a, um, steep, difficult.

argentum, i, N., silver.

āridus, a, um, dry ; **N.**, **aridum, i, as subst.**, dry land.

Ariovistus, i, M., Ariovistus, *a chief of the Germans.*

arma, ōrum, N., *plur.*, arms.

armō, āre, āvī, ātum, arm, equip ; *perf. part. pass.*, armed.

ar-ripio, ere, -ripuī, -reptum, seize.

ars, artis, F., art, skill.

arx, arcis, F., citadel.

a-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scensum, mount, ascend ; go on board.

ascensus, ūs, M., ascent.

aspectus, ūs, M., appearance.

a-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, see.

assue-facio, ere, -fēcī, -factum, accustom, train.

at, conj., but, but yet.

Athēnae, ārum, F., *plur.*, Athens.

Athēniensis, e, adj., Athenian ; *masc. as subst.*, an Athenian.

atque, conj., and ; *in comparisons*, than, as.

at-tingō, ere, -tigī, -tactum, touch ; border on ; reach.

attrib-uo, ere, -uī, -ūtum, assign.

auctor, -ōris, M., adviser ; an authority ; historian.

auctoritās, -tātis, F., influence ; power.

audācia, ae, F., daring.

audacter, adv., boldly.

audeō, ēre, ausus sum, dare.

audiō, īre, īvī, ītum, hear ; listen to ; hear of.

aufero, auferre, abstulī, ablātum, take away, carry off.

augeo, ēre, auxī, auctum, increase, strengthen.

aureus, a, um, of gold, golden.

aurum, i, N., gold, money.

ausus, a, um, *from audeo.*

aut, conj., or ; **aut . . . aut**, either . . . or.
autem, conj., but ; moreover, now, however.
auxilium, i, N., aid ; *in plur.*, auxiliaries, reinforcements.
āver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn aside.
avus, i, M., grandfather.

B

barbarus, a, um, foreign ; uncivilized.
barbarus, i, M., a foreigner, a barbarian.
Belgae, ārum, M., plur., the Belgians, *a people of Gaul*.
bellicōsus, a, um, warlike.
bello, āre, āvī, ātum, to wage war.
bellum, i, N., war.
bene, adv. of bonus (melius optimē), well.
biduum, i, N., the space of two days.
bis, adv., twice.
bonus, a, um (melior, optimus), good ; *N., plur. as subst.*,
bona, ōrum, goods, property.
brevis, e, short ; as adv., brevi, in a short time, presently,
 quickly.
Britannia, ae, F., Britain.
Britannus, i, M., a Briton.

C

cadō, ere, cecidī, cāsum, fall,
caedēs, is, F., slaughter.
caedō, ere, cecidī, caesum, slay.
caelum, i, N., heaven.
caerimōnia, ae, F., reverence.
campus, i, M., field, plain.
capillus, i, M., hair.
capio, ere, cēpī, captum, take, capture.
captivus, i, M., captive, prisoner.
cap ut, -itis, N., head, capital ; of a river, mouth.
careō, ēre, uī, itum, be without, be free from, *with abl.*
carō, carnis, F., flesh, meat.
cārus, a, um, dear, valuable.
castellum, i, N., fortress, stronghold.
castra, ōrum, N., plur., camp.
cāsus, ūs, M., accident ; emergency ; disaster.
causa, ae, F., cause, reason ; *in the abl. sing. with a gen. pre-*
ceding, for the sake of, for the purpose of.
cēdō, ere, cessī, cessum, retreat ; yield.
celer, eris, ere, rapid, sudden.
celeritās, -tātis, F., rapidity, quickness.
celeriter, adv. (celerius celerrime), quickly.

- celo, âre, âvI, âtum, hide.
 cēna, ae, F., dinner.
 cēnō, âre, âvI, âtum, dine.
 centēnI, ae, a, a hundred each.
 centum, a hundred.
 centurio, ōnis, M., centurion.
 cernō, ere, crēvI, crētum, perceive, see.
 certāmen, -minis, N., contest, battle.
 certē, adv., certainly; at least.
 certus, a, um, certain, sure, fixed; certio~~rem~~ facere, inform.
 cēteri, ae, a, the others, the rest of.
 cingō, ere, cinxI, cinctum, surround.
 circā, prep. with acc., around.
 circiter, adv., about, nearly.
 circuitus, ūs, M., circumference.
 circum-dō, -dare, -dedI, -datum, surround.
 circum-eō, -ire, -iI, -itum, or circuitum, surround; make
 a tour of.
 circum-sistō, ere, -stetI, surround, crowd around.
 circum-stō, stāre, -stetI, stand around, surround.
 circum-veniō, ire, -vēnI, -ventum, surround, outflank.
 cis, prep. with acc., on this side of.
 citerior, ius, adj. (comparative), hither, nearer.
 citō, adv. (citius, citissime), quickly, swiftly, rapidly.
 citrā, prep. with acc., on this side of.
 civis, is, M. or F., citizen, fellow-citizen.
 civitās, -tātis, F., state, country.
 clādēs, is, F., defeat, disaster.
 clam, adv., secretly.
 clamō, âre, âvI, âtum, cry, call out.
 clāmor, -ōris, M., shouting, outcry.
 clārus, a, um, celebrated.
 classis, is, F., fleet.
 claudo, ere, clausI, clausum, close; hem in.
 coactus, a, um, from cogō.
 coēgi, from cogō.
 coepi, isse, began.
 coerceō, ēre, uI, itum, restrain, check.
 cognōmen, -minis, N., surname, family name.
 co-gnoseō, ere, -gnōvI, -gnitum, perceive, learn, discover.
 cogō, ere, coēgi, coactum, collect; compel.
 co-hors, -hortis, F., cohort, *division of the Roman army*.
 cohortatio, -ōnis, F., encouragement, haraⁿgue.
 cohortor, ârI, âtus sum, encourage.
 collaudō, âre, âvI, âtum, praise, commend highly.
 collēga, ae, M., colleague.

col-ligō, ere, -lēgī, lectum, collect.

collis, is, M., hill.

collocō, āre, āvī, ātum, place ; arrange.

colloquium, i, N., conference, interview.

col-loquor, i, -locūtus sum, converse, discuss.

colō, ere, coluī, cultum, cultivate ; cherish, venerate, esteem.

commeātus, ūs, M., supplies ; passage.

commemorō, āre, āvī, ātum, mention, relate, state, tell.

commendō, āre, āvī, ātum, commend, entrust.

com-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, do ; engage, entrust.

commodē, adv., easily, to advantage ; effectively.

commodus, a, um, suitable ; neut. as subst., commodum, i, advantage.

commoror, āri, ātus sum, delay, wait.

com-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, alarm, affect, arouse.

communicō, āre, āvī, ātum, communicate, share ; announce.

communiō, ire, ivī, itum, fortify.

communis, e, common, general, concerted.

commutātiō, -ōnis, F., change.

comparō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare, procure ; collect ; compare.

com-pellō, ere, -puli, -pulsum, drive, gather.

com-periō, ire, -peri, -pertum, learn, hear of.

compl-eō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill ; man.

complūres, a (gen., ium), several, many, a great many.

comportō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring in, collect.

compre-hendō, ere, -hendi, -hensum, seize, capture.

con-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, grant, allow ; yield.

con-cido, ere, -cidi, -cisum, cut down, slay.

conciliō, āre, āvī, ātum, win over, make friendly ; gain.

concilium, i, N., assembly, council.

conciō, āre, āvī, ātum, rouse ; urge on.

con-currō, ere, -curri (-eucurri), -cursum, flock ; meet, join battle.

concursum, ūs, M., running together ; collision ; attack.

condicio, -onis, F., terms, agreement.

con-dō, ere, -didi, -ditum, found.

condōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, overlook.

con-ferciō, ire, -fersi, -fertum, pack closely ; perf. part. pass., confertus, a, um, crowded.

conferō, conferre, contulī, collātum, collect, convey ; compare ; with culpam, lay, put.

confestim, adv., immediately, at once.

con-ficiō, ere, -feci, -fectum, finish, accomplish ; spend.

con-fidō, ere, -fisi sum, trust ; be confident.

confirmō, āre, āvī, ātum, establish ; declare ; encourage.

confusus, a, um, from confido.

- con-fligō, ere, -flixī, -flictum, contend, fight.**
confluens, -entis, M, confluence.
con-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, flee, take refuge.
con-gerō, ere, -gessī, -gestum, collect.
con-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, meet; fight.
con-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw, throw together; con-
con-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, join. [jecture.
con-junx, -jugis, F., wife.
conjūratiō, -ōnis, F., conspiracy, league.
conjūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, swear together, form a league.
cōnor, ārī, ātus sum, try, undertake.
con-scendō, ere, -scendī, -scensum, mount; embark.
conscisco, ere, scīvī, scītum, to decree a thing in common,
with sibi mortem = to commit suicide.
con-scribō, ere, -scripsī, -scriptum, enlist; patres con-
scripti, senators.
consector, ārī, ātus sum, follow up.
con-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, follow; overtake; obtain;
accomplish.
con-serō, ere, -seruī, -sertum, join; manum conserere, join
battle.
conservō, āre, āvī, ātum, save; preserve.
con-sīdo, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, sit down; take up a position.
consilium, ī, N., plan, intention; discretion; counsel.
consimilis, e, very similar, like.
con-sistō, ere, -stitī, constitum, take up position; halt.
consōlor, ārī, ātus sum, console.
conspectus, ūs, M., sight, view.
con-spiciō, ere, -spexī, -spectum, see.
conspicor, ārī, ātus sum, catch sight of, see.
conspīrō, āre, āvī, ātum, combine, conspire.
constanter (constantius, constantissime), adv., steadfastly,
uniformly.
constantia, ae, F., firmness.
constitī, from consisto.
constit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, arrange; resolve; station.
constat, impers, it is agreed.
con-suescō, ere, -suēvī, -suētum, become accustomed; in perf.
tenses, am. accustomed.
consuētūdō, -dinis, F., custom.
consul, -sulis, M., consul.
consul-ō, ere, -uī, -tum, consult; provide for, with dat.
consultō, āre, āvī, ātum, deliberate, take counsel.
consultō, adv., purposely.
consultum, ī, N., decree.
con-sūmō, ere, -sumpsī, -sumptum, spend, exhaust.

- con-temnō, ere, -tempſi, -temptum, despise.**
conten-dō, ere, -di, -tum, hasten ; strive ; assert.
contentiō, -ōnis, F., contest.
contestor, ārī, ātus sum, invoke.
continens, -entis, F., mainland, continent.
con-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, restrain, keep ; bound ; pres.
part. as adj., continens, -entis, continuous.
continuus, a, um, successive.
centiō, -ōnis, F., assembly.
contrā, (1) adv., on the contrary ; contra atque, otherwise than. (2) prep. with acc., opposite, against.
con-trahō, ere, -traxī, -tractum, collect, reduce.
contrōversia, ae, F., attack, lawsuit, quarrel.
con-veniō, ire, -vēni, -ventum, come together ; be agreed on.
convenit, impersonal, it is agreed.
conventus, ūs, M., meeting ; assizes.
conver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn, change.
convocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call together.
co-orior, irī, -ortus sum, arise.
cōpia, ae, F., abundance, quantity ; in plur., stores ; troops.
cōram, adv., face to face.
cornu, ūs, N., horn ; wing (of an army).
corpus, -oris, N., body, person.
cor-rumpō, ere, rūpī, -ruptum, bribe, win over, destroy.
cōrus, I, M., the north-west wind.
cotīdiānus, a, um, daily.
cotīdiē, adv., daily, every day.
crēber, bra, brum, frequent, many.
crē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, entrust ; believe, trust (with dat.) ; think.
creō, āre, āvī, ātum, choose, elect.
crīmen, -minis, N., charge, accusation.
cruciātus, ūs, M., torture, cruelty.
crūdēlis, e, cruel, barbarous.
culpa, ae, F., blame, fault.
cultus, ūs, M., civilization.
cum, prep. with abl., with.
cum, conj., when, whenever ; since ; although ; cum primum, as soon as ; cum . . . tum, both . . . and.
cunctor, ārī, ātus sum, hesitate.
cunctus, a, um, all.
cupidē, adv., eagerly.
cupiditās, -tātis, F., eagerness, fondness.
cupidus, a, um, eager, ambitious.
cup-io, ere, -ivi, -itum, be eager, desire earnestly.
cūr, adv., why.

cūra, ae, F., care.

cūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, attend to, take care.

currus, us, M., chariot.

cursus, ūs, M., running, speed ; course, passage.

custōdia, ae, F., guard.

custōdio, īre, īvī (īl), itum, guard, watch.

custōs, tōdis, M., guard, sentry.

D

damnō, āre, āvī, ātum, condemn.

dē, *prep. with abl.*, from ; of ; concerning.

dēbeō, ēre, uī, itum, owe ; *with infin.*, ought.

dē-cernō, ere, -crēvī, -crētum, determine, decree.

decerto, āre, āvī, ātum, to fight hard.

decimus, a, um, tenth.

dēclivis, e, sloping.

dē-currō, ere, -currī (-cucurrī), -cursum, run down.

dēdecus, -oris, N., disgrace, reproach.

dediticius, ī, M., one who has surrendered.

dēditio, ōnis, F., surrender.

dē-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, surrender ; devote.

dē-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead off ; launch ; marry ; conduct.

dēfectio, -ōnis, F., revolt.

dē-fendō, ere, -fendī, -fensum, defend, protect.

dēfero, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, carry, bring ; report.

dēfessus, a, um, *perf. part. cf. defetiscor*, exhausted.

dē-fetiscor, ī, fessus sum, become exhausted.

dē-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, be wanting, revolt.

dē-fligō, ere, -fixī, -fixum, fix, set.

dēformis, e, ill-shaped, unshapely.

deinceps, *adv.*, in turn.

deinde, *adv.*, then, thereupon, thereafter, next.

dē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, throw down.

dēlectus, ūs, M., levy.

dēl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, destroy.

dēligō, āre, āvī, ātum, fasten.

dē-ligō, ere, -lēgī, -lectum, choose, levy.

dēmentia, ae, F., madness, folly.

dē-metō, ere, -messū, -messum, cut down, reap.

dēmigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, *intrans.*, remove, withdraw.

dēmonstrō, āre, āvī, ātum, point out, mention.

densus, a, um, dense, thick.

dē-pōnō, ere, -posū, -positum, lay down ; place ; give up.

dēportō, āre, āvī, ātum, *trans.*, remove, carry

dēpositus, a, um, *from dēponō*.

dēprecor, ārī, ātus sum, petition against.

- dē-scendō, ere, -scendi, -scensum, descend.
 dēser-ō, ere, -ui, -tum, desert.
 dēslderō, āre, āvi, ātum, desire ; lose.
 dē-siliō, Ire, -sili, -sultum, leap down.
 dē-sinō, ere, si, (sivi), -situm, cease.
 dē-sistō, ere, -stiti, -stitum, cease.
 desperō, āre, āvi, ātum, despair of.
 destiti, *from desisto*.
 dēsum, deesse, defui, be wanting.
 dēterreō, ēre, ui, itum, deter.
 dētineō, ēre, ui, detentum, detain.
 dētrimentum, I, N., loss, defeat.
 dēvoveō, ēre, vōvi, vōtum, devote oneself to, pledge oneself to.
 dexter, tra, trum, right ; *fem.*, dextra, *as subst. (sc. manus)*, right hand ; pledge.
 Diāna, ae, F., Diana.
 differō, differre, distuli, dilatum, defer ; differ.
 difficilis, e, difficult.
 difficultās, -tātis, F., difficulty.
 dif-fugiō, ere, fugi, flee, vanish, disappear.
 dignitās, -tātis, F., respect ; dignity.
 dignus, a, um, worthy (*with abl.*).
 diligenter, *adv.*, carefully.
 diligentia, ae, F., care ; diligence.
 di-ligō, ere, -lexi, -lectum, love, esteem.
 dimicō, āre, āvi, ātum, fight.
 di-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, despatch ; send away ; let go away.
 dis-cedō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, go away.
 discessus, ūs, M., departure.
 disciplina, ae, F., training, discipline.
 discō, ere, didici, learn.
 di-spergō, ere, -spersi, -spersum, scatter, separate.
 dis-pliceō, ēre, -plicui, -plicitum, displease (*with dat.*).
 dis-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, place at intervals, station.
 dissimulō, āre, āvi, ātum, conceal.
 dis-solvo, ere, -solvi, -solūtum, destroy.
 dis-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, keep apart.
 distrib-uō, ere, -ui, -ūtum, assign, distribute.
 ditissimus, a, um (*superlative of dives*), richest.
 diū, *adv.* (*diutius, diutissime*), long, for a long time.
 di-vidō, ere, -vixi, -visum, divide, separate.
 divitiæ, ārum, F., *plur.*, riches, wealth.
 dō, dare, dedi, datum, give ; operam, dare, take pains.
 doc-eō, ēre, -ui, -tum, teach, inform.
 dolor, -ōris, M., grief ; resentment.

dolus, I, M., deceit ; craft ; strategy.
domesticus, a, um, at home, private ; *with bellum*, civil.
dom-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, subdue.
domus, ūs, F., house, home ; **domi**, locative, at home.
dōnec, *conj.*, so long as, while.
dōnō, āre, āvī, ātum, present.
dōnum, I, N., gift.
dubitō, āre, āvī, ātum, doubt, hesitate.
dubius, a, um, doubtful.
ducentī, ae, a, two hundred.
dūco, ere, duxī, ductum, lead ; consider.
dulcis, e, pleasant, agreeable.
dum, *conj.*, while, until.
duo, ae, o, two.
duodecim, twelve.
duplicō, āre, āvī, ātum, double.
dūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, endure, remain.
dux, ducis, M., leader, general ; guide.

E

ē, *prep*, *with abl.*, *see ex*.
ē-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead out.
effēmīno, āre, āvī, ātum, to make a woman of.
efferrō, ferre, extulī, ēlātum, carry away, bury ; lift up, exalt.
ef-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, make, construct ; bring about ; complete.
ef-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, -fugitum, escape.
ef-fundō, ere, -fūdī, -fūsum, pour out.
ēgī, *from ago*.
ē-gredior, I, -gressus sum, go forth, leave ; disembark.
ēgregiē, *adv.*, excellently.
ēgregius, a, um, exceptional, eminent.
ēgressus, a, um, *from egredior*.
ēgressūs, ūs, M., landing.
ē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, cast out.
ē-mitto, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send out.
ēmolesco, ere, to become soft.
enim, *conj.*, for, now, in fact, indeed.
eō, īre, īī (ivī), ītum, go, advance.
eō, *adv.*, to that place.
eō, on this account.
eōdem, *adv.*, to the same place.
ephippium, I, N., saddle.
epistula, ae, F., letter, epistle.
equ-es, -itis, M., horseman ; *in plur.*, cavalry.
equester, trīs, tre, belonging to cavalry.

equitātus, ūs, M., cavalry.

equus, I, M., horse.

ergā, *prep. with acc.*, towards.

ergō, *adv.*, therefore, accordingly.

ē-riplō, ere, -rīpui, -reptum, snatch away ; rescue.

ē-rumpo, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, make a sally.

ēruptiō, -ōnis, F., sally.

essedārius, I, M., chariot-warrior.

essedum, I, N., war-chariot.

et, *conj.*, and ; **et . . . et**, both . . . and.

etiam, also ; even ; **non solum . . . sed etiam**, not only . . . but also.

etsi, *conj.*, even if, although.

ēvā-dō, ere, -sī, -sum, make one's way ; escape.

ē-veniō, ire, -vênī, -ventum, turn out, happen.

ēventus, ūs, M., outcome, fate.

ēvocō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out.

ēvolō, āre, āvī, ātum, rush out.

ex (*sometimes e before consonants*), *prep. with abl.*, from, out of ; in accordance with.

ex-ardescō, ere, -arsī, -arsum, blaze forth ; become enraged.

ex-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, go out, leave.

excitō, āre, āvī, ātum, rouse.

exclāmō, āre, āvī, ātum, call out.

ex-clūdō, ere, -clūsī, -clūsum, shut off, hinder.

excursiō, -ōnis, F., invasion.

excūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, excuse.

exemplum, I, N., example.

ex-eō, -ire, -iī (ivī), -itum, go out ; leave.

exerceō, ēre, uī, itum, exercise ; work ; arouse.

exercitātiō, -ōnis, F., exercise.

exercitus, ūs, M., army.

ex-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, drive out.

exiguitās, tātis, F., scantiness, smallness.

exiguus, a, um, small, scanty.

existimō, āre, āvī, ātum, think ; estimate.

exitus, ūs, M., way out ; conclusion ; issue.

expediō, ire, ivī, itum, extricate ; *perf. part. pass.*, **expeditus**, a, um, *as adj.*, unencumbered, without baggage.

expeditiō, -ōnis, F., expedition.

ex-pellō, ere, -pulī, -pulsum, drive out ; banish.

exper-ior, irī, -tus sum, try, prove ; experience.

explicō, āre, āvī, ātum, set forth ; unfold ; deploy.

explōrātor, -ōris, M., scout.

explōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, examine, investigate.

ex-pōnō, ere, -posui, -positum, display ; disembark ; relate.

exportō, āre, āvi, ātum, carry off, remove.
 expugnō, āre, āvi, ātum, take by storm.
 expulsus, a, um, *from expello*.
 exsiliū, i, N., exile.
 expectō, āre, āvi, ātum, await ; wait.
 ex-stinguō, ere, -stinxi, -stinctum, blot out.
 exstō, āre, stand out, be above.
 ex-struō, ere, -struxi, -structum, raise.
 exsul, -sulis, M., exile.
 extemplō, *adv.*, at once, immediately.
 extrā, *prep. with acc.*, outside of.
 ex-trahō, ere, -traxi, -tractum, draw out ; protract.
 extrēmus, a, um (*superlative of exterus, exterior*), farthest,
 last.

F

faber, bri, M., workman, engineer.
 facile, *adv.*, easily.
 facilis, e, easy.
 facinus, oris, N., deed, crime.
 faciō, ere, fēcī, factum, *pass.* fio, fieri, factus sum, make,
 do ; construct ; render ; certiore aliquem facere, inform
 one ; *in pass.*, be made, become, happen.
 factum, i, N., deed, occurrence.
 facultās, -tātis, F., opportunity, power.
 fallō, ere, fefelli, falsum, deceive ; elude.
 falsus, a, um, false.
 fama, ae, F., rumour, news ; reputation.
 faveō, ēre, fāvi, fautum, favour (*with dat.*).
 fefelli, *from fallo*.
 fēliciter, *adv.*, happily.
 ferē, *adv.*, almost ; about.
 ferō, ferre, tuli, lātum, bear ; endure ; withstand ; *in pass.*, go.
 ferox, ōcis, high-spirited, warlike.
 ferreus, a, um, of iron, iron.
 ferrum, i, N., iron ; sword.
 ferus, a, um, fierce, savage.
 fectus, a, um, *from fingo*.
 fidēlis, e, faithful.
 fidēs, ēi, F., faith ; honour ; fidelity ; protection.
 figūra, ae, shape.
 fingō, ere, finxi, fectum, invent.
 finis, ire, ivi, itum, end, bound.
 finis, is, M., end, limit ; *in plur.*, borders, territory.
 finitimus, a, um, neighbouring.
 fiō, fieri, factus sum, *pass. of facio*, be made, be done ;
 become.

- firmiter**, *adv.*, firmly, steadily.
firmō, āre, āvi, ātum, strengthen.
firmus, a, um, strong.
flamma, ae, F., flame.
flectō, ere, flexi, flexum, turn, **guide**.
flēō, ēre, flēvi, flētum, weep.
flō, āre, āvi, ātum, blow.
fluctus, ūs, M., wave.
flūmen, -inis, N., river.
fluō, ere, fluxi, fluxum, flow.
foedus, -eris, N., treaty, league.
fore, *fut. infin. of sum*.
forem = essem.
forma, ae, F., shape, form.
fors, fortis, F., chance.
forte, *adv.*, by chance
fortis, e, brave.
fortiter, *adv.*, bravely.
fortitūdō, -dinis, F., bravery.
fortūna, ae, F., chance, fortune ; good fortune, lot ; *in plur.*, possessions.
fossa, ae, F., ditch.
fragor, -ōris, M., crash.
frangō, ere, frēgi, fractum, break, shatter ; crush.
frāter, -tris, M., brother.
fraus, fraudis, F., trick.
frēgi, *from frango*.
fremitus, ūs, M., din.
frequens, -entis, in large numbers, in crowds.
frigidus, a, um, cold.
frigus, -oris, cold ; frost.
frumentārius, a, um, pertaining to grain ; **res frumentaria**, supply of corn.
frumentor, āri, ātus sum, forage.
frumentum, l, N., grain, corn ; *in plur.*, crops.
frustrā, *adv.*, in vain.
fūdi, *from fundo*.
fuga, ae, F., flight.
fugiō, ere, fugi, fugitum, flee, escape.
fugō, āre, āvi, ātum, put to flight, rout.
funda, ae, F., sling.
fundō, ere, fūdi, fūsum, pour, rout, overthrow.
fungor, i, functus sum, perform a duty, hold an office, *with abl*.
fūnis, is, M., rope, cable.
furor, ōris, M., madness, fury.
fūsus, *from fundo*.

G

gaudeō, ēre, gavīsus sum, rejoice.

gaudium, i, N., joy.

gener, erī, M., son-in-law.

generōsus, a, um, of noble birth.

gens, gentis, F., nation.

genus, -eris, N., race ; class, kind.

gero, ere, gessī, gestum, carry on, wage ; conduct ; *in pass.*, be done, happen.

gesta, ōrum, N., *plur.* (*perf. part. pass. of gero, used substantively*), events, deeds.

gladius, i, M., sword.

glōria, ae, F., glory, fame.

grātia, ae, F., favour ; influence ; kindness ; **gratias agere**, thank ; *in abl. preceded by gen.*, **gratia**, for the sake of.

grātulor, ari, atus sum, thank.

grātus, a, um, pleasing ; acceptable.

gravis, e, heavy, severe ; bitter ; weighty.

gravitās, -tātis, F., weight ; strength ; dignity.

graviter, adv., severely, bitterly.

gubernātor, -ōris, M., pilot, helmsman.

H

habeō, ēre, uī, itum, have ; hold ; consider.

haereō, ēre, haesi, haesum, stick fast.

haud, adv., not.

hērēditās, -ātis, F., inheritance.

hiberna, ōrum, N., *plur.*, winter-quarters.

hic, adv., here, hereupon, now.

hiemō, āre, āvī, ātum, pass the winter.

hiems, hiemis, F., winter, stormy weather.

hinc, adv., hence, from this place.

hodiē, adv., to-day.

hodiernus, a, um, to-day's.

hom-ō, -inis, M. and F., man, mankind.

honestās, -tātis, F., honour, integrity.

honestus, a, um, honourable.

honor (or honos), -ōris, M., honour ; office.

hōra, ae, F., hour.

horreō, ēre, uī, tremble at.

horridus, a, um, terrible.

hortor, āri, ātus sum, encourage, exhort.

hosp-es, -itis, M., guest, friend.

hospitium, i, N., hospitality, friendship.

hostis, is, M., enemy.

hūc, *adv.*, to this place.
hūmānitās, -tātis, F., refinement.
humānus, a, um, human ; civilized.
humī, *adv.*, on the ground.
humilis, e, low, obscure.
humil-itās, -tātis, F., lowness.

I

ibi, *adv.*, there, in that place.
idcirco, *adv.*, for this reason.
Idem, eadem, idem, the same.
idōneus, a, um, suitable.
igitur, *conj.*, therefore ; then.
ignis, is, M., fire.
ignōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, not know.
ignoscō, ere, ignōvī, ignōtum, forgive, *with dative*.
ignōtus, a, um, unknown.
illātus, a, um, *from infero*.
immortālis, e, immortal.
impedimentum, i, N., hindrance ; *in plur.*, baggage.
impediō, īre, īvī, ītum, hinder, check ; *perf. part. pass. as*
adj., impeditus, a, um, hampered ; impassable.
im-pellō, ere, -pullī, pulsum, push ; incite.
imperātor, -ōris, M., general.
imperātum, i, N., order.
imperītus, a, um, inexperienced, *with gen.*
imperium, i, N., command, supreme power, rule, authority.
imperō, āre, āvī, ātum, demand, command.
impetrō, āre, āvī, ātum, obtain one's request.
impetus, ūs, M., attack, impetuosity.
impl-eō, ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, fill up, complete.
importō, āre, āvī, ātum, bring in, import.
imprōvīsus, a, um, unforeseen ; **improviso** or **de improvise**,
 unexpectedly.
imprūdēns, -entis, unsuspecting.
imprudentia, ae, F., indiscretion ; ignorance.
in, *prep.*, 1. *with acc.*, into, against ; 2. *with abl.*, in, on ;
 among ; in the case of.
inānis, e, empty.
incendium, i, N., fire ; burning.
in-cendō, ere, -cendī, -censum, set on fire ; inflame.
incertus, a, um, uncertain, confused.
incitō, āre, āvī, ātum, urge on ; irritate ; *in pass.*, go at full
 speed.
incognitus, a, um, unknown.
incola, ae, M. & F., inhabitant.

- incol-ō, ere, uī, inhabit, dwell.**
incolumis, e, safe, unharmed.
incommodum, i, N., misfortune, loss.
incredibilis, e, incredible.
incursiō, -ōnis, F., raid.
incūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, to accuse, blame.
inde, adv., from that place ; then, next.
indiciū, i, N., mark, proof.
in-dīcō, ere, -dixī, dictum, declare, proclaim.
indigena, M. & F., a native.
indigeō, ēre, uī, be in need of, with gen.
indignor, ārī, ātus sum, be indignant.
in-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead into.
indul-geō, ēre, -sī, -tum, favour, with dat.
ind-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, put on.
industria, ae, F., diligence.
indūtia, ae, F., plur., truce.
in-eō, Ire, -īl (-Ivī), -itum, enter upon, begin.
inermis, e, unarmed.
in-ers, ertis, lifeless.
infectus, a, um, not done, unaccomplished.
inferior, ius, comparative of, inferus, a, um, lower.
infero, inferre, intuli, illātum, bring, bring upon.
infinītus, a, um, endless, countless.
infirmiās, -tātis, F., fickleness.
infirmus, a, um, weak.
in-fluō, ere, -fluxī, -fluxum, flow (into).
infra, adv., below, farther down.
ingens, -entis, huge, vast.
in-gredior, ī, -gressus sum, enter ; enter upon, begin.
inimīcus, a, um, unfriendly ; as subst., inimicus, ī, M., enemy.
initium, ī, N., beginning, frontier.
in-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, put into, inspire.
injūria, ae, F., injury, injustice.
inopia, ae, F., scarcity.
inopinans, -antis, not expecting.
inopinātus, a, um, unexpected.
inquam, inquit, defective, say.
insciens, -entis, not knowing.
inscius, a, um, ignorant.
in-sequor, ī, -secūtus sum, pursue.
insidiae, ārum, F, plur., ambush, stratagem, treachery.
insinuō, āre, āvī, ātum, wind in ; with se, work one's way in.
in-sistō, ere, -stitī, stand on ; keep one's footing.
instit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, undertake ; get ready ; levy.
institutum, ī, N., custom.

- instō, āre, -stiti**, press forward.
in-struō, ere, -struxi, -structum, draw up ; arrange, build ; equip.
insuē-facio, ere, -fēci, -factum, train.
insuētus, a, um, unaccustomed.
insula, ae, F., island.
integer, gra, grum, unimpaired ; fresh.
intel-legō, ere, -lexi, -lectum, understand, perceive.
inter, prep. with acc., between, among, during.
inter-cēdō, ere, -cessi, -cessum, come between.
inter-elūdō, ere, -elūsi, -elūsum, cut off.
inter-dicō, ere, -dixi, -dictum, forbid, warn.
interdum, sometimes.
intereā, adv., meanwhile.
inter-eō, -ire, ī (ivi), -itum, perish ; be lost.
inter-ficiō, ere, -fēci, -fectum, kill.
interim, adv., meanwhile.
inter-mittō, ere, -misi, -missum, stop, discontinue ; postpone ; *in pass.*, elapse, cease.
inter-pōno, ere, -posui, -positum, interpose ; pledge ; *in pass.*, intervene.
interpretor, āri, ātus sum, explain.
interrogō, āre, āvi, ātum, ask, question.
inter-rumpō, ere, -rūpi, -ruptum, break down.
inter-sum, -esse, -fui, be between ; take part in ; *as impersonal verb*, interest, it is of importance.
intervallum, ī, N., interval, distance.
intrā, prep. with acc., within.
intrō, āre, āvi, ātum, enter.
introitus, ūs, M., entrance, approach.
in-tueor, ēri, -tuitus sum, look upon, consider.
inūsitātus, a, um, unusual, novel.
inūtilis, e, useless.
invā-dō, ere, -si, -sum, enter ; **invado in**, attack.
in-veniō, īre, -veni, -ventum, come upon, find.
invicem, adv., in turn.
invictus, a, um, unconquered.
invidia, ae, F., envy, hatred.
invitō, āre, āvi, ātum, invite.
invitus, a, um, unwillingly.
Irātus, a, um, angry.
ir-rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptum, to break into, rush in.
ita, adv., so, thus.
itaque, adv., and so, therefore.
item, adv., likewise, also.
iter, itineris, N., march, road, journey.
iterum, adv., again, a second time.

J

jaceō, ēre, nī, itum, lie.
jaciō, ere, jēcī, jactum, throw.
jam, adv., now ; already ; with negatives, any more, longer.
jubeō, ēre, jussī, jussum, order.
jūdicium, i, N., trial ; judgment.
jūdicō, āre, āvī, ātum, judge ; consider ; adjudge.
jugum, i, N., yoke.
jumentum, i, N., beast of burden.
jungō, ere, junxī, junctum, join.
jūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, swear.
jūs, jūris, N., right, law.
jūsjūrandum, jūrisjūrandi, N., oath.
jussū, abl. used as adv., by order.
justitia, ae, F., justice, uprightness.
justus, a, um, just, fair, regular.
juvenis, is, M., youth, soldier.
juvō, āre, jūvī, jūtum, aid.
juxtā, adv. and prep., close to.

L

labor, ōris, toil, hardship ; endurance ; difficulty.
labōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, toil, strive ; be hard pressed.
labrum, i, N., lip.
lac, lactis, N., milk.
laccess-ō, ere, -īvī, -itum, harass, attack.
lacus, ūs, M., lake.
languidus, a, um, faint, weak.
latē, adv., widely.
lātītūdo, -dinis, F., width, extent.
lātus, a, um, wide, extensive.
latus, -eris, N., side.
laudō, āre, āvī, ātum, praise.
laus, laudis, F., praise, credit.
légātiō, -ōnis, F., embassy.
légātus, i, M., a deputy, hence ambassador ; lieutenant-general.
legiō, -ōnis, F., legion.
legionārius, a, um, legionary.
lēgitimus, a, um, legal.
legō, ere, lēgī, lectum, choose ; read.
lēnis, e, gentle, light.
lēniter, adv., gently.
lepus, -oris, M., hare.
levis, e, light, trifling.

lex, lēgis, F., law.

libenter, adv., gladly.

liber, era, erum, free.

liberāliter, adv., graciously, kindly.

liberē, adv., freely, frankly.

liberī, -ōrum, M., plur., children.

liberō, āre, āvī, ātum, free, release.

libertās, -tātis, F., liberty, independence.

licet, ēre, licuit, it is permitted.

lignum, ī, N., log, wood.

lingua, ae, F., tongue, language.

lis, lītis, F., law suit, damages.

littera, ae, F., letter (*of the alphabet*); *in plur.*, letter, despatch; literature.

lītus, -oris, N., shore.

locus, ī, M. (plur., loca, ōrum, N.), place, position, ground, country.

longē, adv., far, long.

longinquus, a, um, distant ; long.

longitūdō, -dinis, F., length.

longus, a, um, long ; tedious ; navis longa, warship, war galley.

loquor, ī, locūtus sum, speak.

lūna, ae, F., moon.

lux, lūcis, F., light ; *prima luce or orta luce, at daybreak.*

M

magis, comparative adv., more, rather.

magistrātus, ūs, M., magistrate ; magistracy.

magnitūdō, -dinis, F., greatness ; size.

magnopere, adv. (magis, maxima), greatly, earnestly.

magnus, a, um (major, maximus), great ; loud.

māior, us, comparative of magnus, greater.

male, adv., badly, wrongly.

malefīcium, ī, N., wrong-doing, outrage.

mālo, malle, māluī, prefer, had rather.

malum, ī, N., evil ; calamity.

malus, a, um, bad, evil.

mandātum, ī, N., order, instruction.

mandō, āre, āvī, ātum, instruct ; betake.

māne, adv., in the morning.

maneō, ēre, mansī, mansum, remain ; abide.

manipulus, ī, M., company (of soldiers).

manus, ūs, F., hand ; band, force.

mare, is, N., sea.

maritimus, a, um, maritime, naval.

- māter, -tris, F., mother.**
māteria, ae, F., timber, wood.
mātūrē, adv. (maturius, maturrime), early, soon.
mātūrō, āre, āvī, ātum, hasten.
mātūrus, a, um, early, ripe.
maximē, superlative adv., very greatly, most, especially.
maximus, a, um, superlative of magnus.
medius, a, um, middle.
mellor, us, better, comparative of bonus.
memor, -oris, mindful, with gen.
memoria, ae, F., memory, account ; time.
mens, mentis, F., mind, intellect.
mensis, is, M., month.
mentīō, -ōnis, F., mention.
mercātor, -ōris, M., merchant.
mereō, ēre, ul, itum, deserve, earn.
merīdiānus, a, um, of mid-day.
merīdiēs, ēī, M., mid-day ; the south.
meritum, ī, N., service ; merit.
meto, erē, messul, messum, reap.
metus, ūs, M., fear.
meus, a, um, my, mine.
mil-es, -itis, M., soldier.
millitāris, e, military.
mille, indeclinable adj., a thousand ; subst. in plur., milla, ium, N., thousands.
minimē, adv., superlative of parum, very little, least.
minor, us, comparative of parvus, less, smaller.
min-nō, ere, -ul, -ūtum, lessen.
minus, adv., comparative of parum, less ; sometimes non, not.
mīror, āri, ātus sum, wonder, wonder at.
mīrus, a, um, wonderful.
miser, era, erum, wretched.
miserīcordia, ae, F., compassion, pity.
mittō, ere, mīsl, missum, send.
mōbilis, e, changeable, uncertain.
mōbilitās, -tātis, F., mobility.
moderor, āri, ātus sum, manage, check.
modo, adv., only, but.
modus, ī, M., measure, fashion, manner ; abl., modo, in the character (of).
moenia, ium, N., plur., walls.
mōlimentum, ī, N., great exertion.
mōllior, īri, itus sum, plan.
mollis, e, easy ; favorable.
moneō, ēre, ul, -itum, warn, advise.

mons, montis, M., mountain.
mora, ae, F., delay.
morior, mori, mortuus sum, die ; *perf. part. as adj.*, **mortuus, a, um**, dead.
moror, âri, âtus sum, delay, wait.
mors, mortis, F., death.
mortuus, a, um, *from morior*.
môs, môris, M., manner, custom ; *in plur. often character*.
môtus, ūs, M., movement ; revolt.
moveô, êre, mōvī, môtum, move ; influence.
mox, adv., soon, presently.
mulier, -eris, F., woman.
multitudo, -dinis, F., great numbers, multitude.
multô, âre, âvī, âtum, punish, fine.
multô, adv., by far, by much.
multus, a, um (plus, plurimus), much.
mûniô, ire, Ivī, Itum, fortify, protect ; construct.
mûnitiô, -ônis, F., fortifying ; fortification ; defences.
mûnus, -eris, N., present, gift.
mûrus, i, M., wall.
mûtô, âre, âvī, âtum, change, exchange.

N

nam, conj., for.
namque, conj., for.
nanciscor, I, nancetus sum, find, meet with.
nancetus, a, um, *from nanciscor*.
narrô, âre, âvī, âtum, tell, relate.
nascor, I, nâtus sum, be born, be sprung from ; of metals, be found.
nâtiô, -ônis, F., race, tribe.
nâtûra, ae, F., nature, character.
nâtus, a, um, *from nascor*.
nauta, ae, M., sailor.
nâvâlis, e, naval.
nâvigâtiô, -ônis, F., sailing, voyage.
nâvigium, i, N., ship.
nâvigô, âre, âvī, âtum, sail.
nâvis, is, F., ship ; **navis longa**, warship, man-of-war ;
navis oneraria, transport.
nê, conj., lest, in order that not.
nê, adv., not ; **ne . . . quidem**, not even.
nec, see neque.
necessariô, adv., of necessity.
necesse, indeclinable adj., necessary.
necessitâs, -tâtis, F., necessity.
necô, âre, âvī, âtum, kill.

neg-legō ere, -lexī, -lectum, neglect, disregard.

negō, āre, āvī, ātum, deny, say . . . not.

negōtium, ī, N., business, matter ; trouble.

nēmo (neminis), M., no one, nobody.

nequāquam, adv., by no means.

neque, or sometimes *neq̄* before consonants, conj., and not, nor, neither.

neu, conj., and not, nor.

neuter, tra, trum, neither.

nihil, N., indecl., nothing.

nihilum, ī, N., nothing ; **nihilō**, abl. as adv., none ; **nihilō minus**, **nihilō secius**, nevertheless, none the less.

nisi, conj., if not, unless, except.

nitor, ī, **nisus** and **nixus** sum, strive, depend upon.

nōbilis, e, noble ; famous.

nōbilitās, -tātis, F., high birth ; the nobility.

noceō, ēre, uī, itum, injure, with dat.

noctū, abl. as adv., by night.

nocturnus, a, um, by night.

nōlō, nolle, nōluī, be unwilling, not want, refuse.

nōmen, -minis, N., name ; reputation.

nōminātim, adv., by name.

nōn, adv., not.

nondum, adv., not yet.

nonnihil, N., indecl., something.

nonnullus, a um, some.

noscō, ere, nōvī, nōtum, in perf., know.

noster, tra, trum, our ; M., plur. as subst., our forces.

nōtus, from **nosco**, well-known.

nōvī, from **noseo**.

novitās, -tātis, F., novelty.

novus, a, um, new ; **novissimus**, last, rear ; **novae res**, change of government.

nox, noctis, F., night.

nūdus, a, um, naked, bare.

nullus, a, um, no, none.

numerus, ī, M., number.

numquam or **nunquam**, adv., never.

nunc, adv., now.

nuntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, announce.

nuntius, ī, M., messenger ; report.

nūtus, ūs, M., nod, sign.

O

ō, interjection, oh !

ob, prep. with acc., on account of.

ob-eō, -ire, -iī (ivī), -itum, meet ; perform.

- ob-jiciō**, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, placed in the way of, appear : *pass.*
lie opposite.
- ob-liviscor**, I, -litus sum, forget, *with gen.*
- obsecrō**, āre, -āvī, -atum, beseech.
- ob-ses**, -sidis, M., hostage.
- ob-sideō**, ēre, -sēdī, -sessum, besiege ; occupy.
- obstidū**, -ōnis, F., siege.
- obstinguō**, -ēre, -stingui, -stinctum, quench.
- obtemperō**, āre, -āvī, -atum, obey, *with dat.*
- ob-tineō**, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, hold.
- obtuli**, from offero.
- obvinctus**, m. or f. plur. *pass. part.* : obvincere or venire (*with dat.*),
bind or come ; be bound.
- occasiō**, -ōnis, F., opportunity.
- occidō**, ere, -cidī, -cāsum, fall, be slain.
- oc-cidō**, ere, -cidī, -cīsum, slay.
- occipit**, -ere, -āvī, -atum, fall.
- occupō**, āre, -āvī, -atum, *pass. part.* : *pass.*, occupatus,
occupied ; occupied.
- occurrō**, ere, -currī, -cursum, meet, find.
- oculus**, I, M., eye.
- odium**, I, N., hatred.
- offerō**, offerre, obtulī, oblātum, present.
- officiū**, I, N., duty ; allegiance, service.
- omnino**, adv., altogether ; *with negatives*, at all.
- omnis**, e, all, every.
- onerarius**, a, um, that carries loads : *navis oneraria*, a trans-
port.
- onerō**, āre, -āvī, -atum, load.
- onus**, -eris, N., burden ; load.
- opera**, ac, F., effort ; agency ; *operam dare*, take measure.
- opes**, from ops.
- opinio**, -ōnis, F., opinion ; reputation.
- oportet**, ēre, oportuit, *impersonal verb.*, it behoves, it is neces-
sary.
- oppidānus**, I, M., an inhabitant of a town.
- oppidum**, I, N., town.
- op-pōnō**, ere, -posuī, -positum, oppose, place in the way.
- opportūnē**, adv., opportunely.
- opportūnus**, a, um, fortunate ; suitable.
- op-primō**, ere, -pressī, -pressum, overwhelm, crush, surprise.
- oppugnō**, āre, -āvī, -atum, attack.
- (ops), opis, F., power, aid ; *generally in plur.*, **opes**, **opum**,
resources ; forces ; assistance.
- opus**, -eris, N., work ; fortification.

opus, N., *found only in nom. and acc. sing.*, need.

ōra, ae, F., coast.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, F., speech, statement.

ōrātor, -ōris, M., speaker, ambassador.

orbis, is, F., circle, the world.

ordior, Irī, **orsus sum**, begin.

ordō, -dinis, M., rank, line.

orior, Irī, **ortus sum**, rise, begin ; be born.

ornō, āre, āvī, ātum, supply, furnish, equip, **prepare**.

ōrō, āre, āvī, ātum, pray, beg, entreat.

ortus, a, um, *from orior*.

ōs, ōris, N., mouth ; face.

os, ossis, N., bone.

osten-dō, ere, -dī, -tum, *or ostensum*, show, display ; point out, declare.

P

pābulātor, -ōris, M., forager.

pābulator, āri, ātus sum, forage.

pāco, āre, āvī, ātum, subdue.

paene, *adv.*, almost, nearly.

paenitet, ēre, *paenituit*, *impersonal verb.*, it repents.

pāgus, I, M., district, canton.

palam, *adv.*, openly, publicly.

pal-ūs, -ūdis, F., swamp.

pār, paris, equal.

parcō, ere, **peperci** (*parsi*), **parsum** (*or parcitum*), spare, *with dat.*

parens, -entis, M. and F., parent.

pāreō, ēre, -uī, -itum, obey, *with dat.*

pario, ere, **peperi**, **partum**, produce ; win.

parō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare.

pars, partis, F., part, some.

partim, *adv.*, partly.

partus, *from pario*.

parumper, *adv.*, for a short time.

parvulus, a, um, small.

parvus, a, um (*minor, minimus*), small.

passim, *adv.*, in all directions.

passus, a, um, *from patior*.

passus, ūs, M., pace ; *one thousand paces* = Roman mile.

pate-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, open up.

pate-fiō, -fierī, -factus sum, *pass. of patefacio*.

pateō, ēre, uī, extend.

pater, -tris, M., father ; **patres conscripti**, senators.

paternus, a, um, of a father.

patior, I, **passus sum**, suffer, allow.

- patria**, *ae*, *F.*, native country.
paucitās, *-tātis*, *F.*, fewness.
paucus, *a*, *um*, few, little.
paulātim, *adv.*, gradually.
paulisper, *adv.*, for a short time.
paulō, *adv.*, a little.
paulum, *adv.*, a little.
paupertās, *-tātis*, *F.*, poverty.
pavor, *-ōris*, *M.*, fear, panic.
pax, *pācis*, *F.*, peace.
pecūnia, *ae*, *F.*, money.
pecus, *-oris*, *N.*, cattle ; meat.
ped-es, *-itis*, *M.*, foot-soldier.
pedester, *tris*, *tre*, on or by land ; of infantry.
peditātus, *ūs*, *M.*, infantry.
pellis, *is*, *F.*, skin.
pellō, *ere*, **pepull**, **pulsum**, defeat ; drive out.
pendō, *ere*, **pependi**, **pensum**, weigh, pay.
penes, *prep. with acc.*, with, in the hands of.
peperi, *from pario*.
pepull, *from pello*.
per, *prep. with acc.*, through ; during ; by means of.
per-ago, *ere*, **-ēgī**, **-actum**, complete.
percontātiō, *-ōnis*, *F.*, inquiry.
percontor, **ārī**, **ātus sum**, ask.
per-eō, **-īre**, **-īl** (**-īvī**), **-itum**, perish, be killed.
perequitō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, ride about.
per-ferō, **-ferre**, **-tullī**, **-lātum**, carry, report, bring ; endure.
per-ficiō, *ere*, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, finish.
perfidia, *ae*, *F.*, treachery.
perfuga, *ae*, *M.*, deserter.
perfugium, **ī**, *N.*, refuge, place of refuge.
periculōsus, *a*, *um*, dangerous.
periculum, *i*, *N.*, danger, risk ; attempt.
perītus, *a*, *um*, skilled, *with gen.*
perlātus, *a*, *um*, *from perfero*.
per-maneō, *ēre*, **-mansī**, **-mansum**, continue, remain.
per-mittō, *ere*, **-mīsī**, **-missum**, entrust ; permit.
per-moveō, *ēre*, **-mōvī**, **-mōtum**, move, influence ; alarm.
perpaucus, *a*, *um*, very little, very few.
perpetuus, *a*, *um*, lasting ; *in perpetuum*, for ever.
per-rumpō, *ere*, **-rūpī**, **-ruptum**, break through.
per-sequor, **ī**, **-secūtus**, **sum**, pursue ; attack.
perseverō, **āre**, **āvī**, **ātum**, persist.
per-spicio, *ere*, **-spexī**, **-spectum**, see, observe ; ascertain.
per-suadeō, *ēre*, **-suasī**, **-suasum**, persuade, *with dat.*

- perterreō, ēre, uī, itum, terrify.
 pertinācia, ae, F., obstinacy.
 per-tineō, ēre, -tinui, extend, tend.
 pertali, *from* perfero.
 perturbātiō, -ōnis, F., alarm.
 perturbo, āre, āvī, -ātum, thrown into confusion.
 per-veniō, ire, -vēnī, -ventum, come.
 pes, pedis, M., foot.
 pet-ō, ēre, īvī (-īī), -itum, ask ; seek ; aim at.
 pilum, I, N., javelin.
 piscis, is, M., fish.
 placeō, ēre, uī, itum, please.
 plānus, a, um, level.
 plebs *and* plēbēs, plēbis, F., plebs, the common people.
 plēnus, a, um, full.
 plerūque, pleraque, pleraque, the most, most people.
 plērūque, *adv.*, generally.
 plurimum, *adv.*, *superlative of* multum, most, very much.
 plurimus, a, um, *superlative of* multus, most, very much.
 plūs, pluris, *comparative of* multus, more.
 poena, ae, F., penalty, punishment.
 polliceor, ērī, itus sum, promise.
 pondus, -eris, N., weight.
 pōne, ere, posui, positum, place ; *with* arma, lay down.
 pons, pontis, M., bridge.
 poposcī, *from* posco.
 popolor, āri, ātus sum, devastate.
 populus, i, M., people, nation.
 porta, ae, F., gate.
 portō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry.
 portus, ūs, M., harbour.
 posco, ere, poposcī, demand.
 pos-sīdō, ere, -sēdī, -sessum, seize.
 possum, posse, potuī, be able ; be powerful.
 post, (1) *adv.*, afterwards, after. (2) *prep. with* acc., after, behind.
 postea, *adv.*, afterwards.
 posterus, a, um, next, subsequent.
 post-pōnō, ere, -posuī, -positum, set aside.
 postquam (*often written* post . . . quam), *conj.*, after.
 postrīdiē, *adv.*, next day.
 postulātum, i, N., demand.
 postulō, āre, āvī, ātum, demand.
 potens, -entis, powerful.
 potentia, ae, F., power.
 potestās, -tātis, F., power ; permission.

potissimum, *adv.*, especially, chiefly.

potius, *adv.*, rather, more.

potui, *from* possum.

præbecē, ēre, ūī, itum, show ; supply.

præceps, -cipitis, headlong ; steep.

præceptum, i, N., instruction.

præcepitō, ēre, -cepī, -ceptum, instruct.

præcipitō, āre, āvī, ātum, throw, hurl.

præcipuē, *adv.*, especially, particularly.

præclares, a, um, noble, famous.

præclari, āri, ātus sum, glorify.

præfectus, i, M., chief (e.g. *præfectus provincie*).

præfigō, ēre, -fēci, -fectum, place in command of, *with acc. and dat.*

præfigō, ēre, -fēxi, -fixum, fix in front, advance.

præmittō, ēre, -misi, -missum, send in advance.

præmium, i, N., reward.

præparō, āre, āvī, ātum, prepare beforehand.

præsertim, *adv.*, especially, particularly.

præsidium, i, N., guard, garrison.

præstat, āre, -stiti, -statum *or* -stitum, show, do ; excel ;

fulfil ; **præstat**, *impersonal*, it is better.

præsum, -esse, -fuī, be at head of, *with dat.*

præter, *prep. with acc.*, except ; beyond.

prætereā, *adv.*, besides.

prætermittō, ēre, -misi, -missum, let pass by.

preces, um, F (e.g. *preces*), prayers.

precor, āri, ātus sum, pray.

pressō, ēre, -pressi, -pressum, press, press hard.

prīdiē, *adv.*, the day before.

prīnipilus, i, M., chief centurion.

prīmo, *adv.*, at first.

prīmum, *adv.*, first, in the first place ; *cum or ubi primum*,

as soon as ; **quam primum**, as soon as possible.

prīmus, a, um, *superlative* of prior, first ; *in primis*, especi-

prīnceps, -cipis, chief ; M., *as subst.*, leader. [ally.]

prīncipātus, ūs, M., leadership.

prior, ius, comparative, former.

priscus, a, um, ancient.

prīstinus, a, um, former.

prīus, comparative *adv.*, earlier, sooner.

prīusquam (often written **prīus . . . quam**), *conj.*, before.

prīvātīm, *adv.*, privately.

prīvātus, a, um, private.

prō, *prep. with abl.*, before, in front of ; on behalf of.

pro-cēdō, -cēdere, -cessi, -cessum, go forward.

- procul**, *adv.*, at a distance.
- prōcūro**, *āre*, **āvī**, *ātum*, to take care of in place of another,
- prōditiō**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, treason. [to look after.]
- prōditor**, *-ōris*, *M.*, traitor.
- prō-dō**, *ere*, **-didī**, *-ditum*, betray ; hand down.
- prō-dūcō**, *ere*, **-duxī**, *-ductum*, lead forth ; prolong ; entice.
- proellor**, *ārī*, *ātus sum*, fight.
- proelium**, *i*, *N.*, battle.
- profectiō**, *-ōnis*, *F.*, departure.
- profectus**, *a*, *um*, *from* **proficiscor**.
- prōfectus**, *a*, *um*, *from* **prōficio**.
- professus**, *a*, *um*, *from* **profiteor**.
- prōficiō**, *ere*, **-fēcī**, *-fectum*, effect, accomplish.
- pro-ficiscor**, *I*, *-fectus sum*, set out.
- pro-fiteor**, *ērī*, *-fessus sum*, confess ; state.
- pro-gredior**, *I*, *-gressus sum*, go forward.
- prohibeō**, *ēre*, *uī*, *itum*, restrain, prevent ; protect.
- prō-jiciō**, *ere*, **-jēcī**, *-jectum*, throw down, throw.
- pro-mittō**, *ere*, **-mīsī**, *-missum*, promise ; **promissus**, *a*, *um*, long.
- prōmoveo**, *ēre*, **mōvī**, *mōtum*, move forward.
- promptus**, *a*, *um*, ready, quick.
- prope**, *adv.* (**propius**, **proxime**), near ; nearly ; *as prep. with acc.*, near.
- prō-pellō**, *ere*, **-pulī**, *-pulsum*, dislodge.
- properō**, *āre*, **āvī**, *ātum*, hasten.
- propinquitās**, *-tātis*, *F.*, nearness, proximity.
- propinquus**, *a*, *um*, near, neighbouring ; *M.*, *as subst.*, relative.
- propior**, *ius*, *comparative*, nearer ; *see proximus*.
- propius**, *adv.*, *comparative of prope*, nearer.
- propter**, *prep. with acc.*, on account of.
- proptereā**, *adv.*, on this account ; **propterea quod**, because.
- prō-sequor**, *ī*, **-secūtus sum**, accompany ; pursue.
- prospectus**, *ūs*, *M.*, sight.
- pro-spiciō**, *ere*, **-spexī**, *-spectum*, look out ; take care.
- protēgō**, *ere*, **xī**, *ctum*, protect.
- prō-vehō**, *ere*, **-vexī**, *-vectum*, carry forward.
- prō-vidēō**, *ēre*, **-vidī**, *-vīsum*, provide, procure ; take precaution.
- prōvincia**, *ae*, *F.*, province. [tions.]
- proximus**, *a*, *um*, nearest, next.
- prudentia**, *ae*, *F.*, discretion, sagacity.
- publicē**, *adv.*, officially, as a state, at the public expense.
- publicō**, *āre*, **āvī**, *ātum*, confiscate.
- publicus**, *a*, *um*, of the state, public ; **res publica**, state.
- puella**, *ae*, *F.*, girl.
- puer**, *erī*, *M.*, boy ; servant.

pulsus, a, um, *from pello*.
 pulv-is, -eris, M., dust.
 puppis, is, F., stern of a vessel.
 purgō, āre, āvi, ātum, excuse, clear.
 putō, āre, āvi, ātum, think.

Q

quā, *adv.*, where, by which route.
 quācumque, *adv.*, wherever.
 quaerō, ere, quaesivī (-ii), quaesitum, ask ; seek.
 quaestor, -ōris, M., quaestor, paymaster.
 quam, *adv.*, as ; how ; *after comparatives*, than ; *with superlatives*, as . . . as possible.
 quamobrem, *adv.*, wherefore.
 quantus, a, um, how great, how much ; (as great) as, (as much) as.
 quārē, *adv.*, wherefore. [as.
 quartus, a, um, fourth.
 quasi, *conj.*, as if.
 -que, *enclitic conj.*, and.
 queror, ī, questus sum, complain.
 quia, *conj.*, because.
 quicquam, *from quisquam*.
 quicumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, whoever, whatever, [whichever.
 quid, N. of quis, as *adv.*, why.
 quīdam, quaedam, quoddam or quiddam, a certain.
 quidem, *adv.*, certainly, indeed ; however ; ne . . . quidem, [not even.
 quīn, *conj.*, but that.
 quīn, *adv.*, nay, in fact.
 quisnam, quāenam, quīdnā, *interrogative pron.* (-nam adding emphasis), who, which, what.
 quisquam, quīquā or quicquam, anyone, anything.
 quisque, quaeque, quīdque or quodque, each ; every.
 quō, *adv.*, 1 *rel.*, whither, where. 2. *interrog.*, where, whither.
 quō, *abl. of quī, conj.*, that, in order that ; because.
 quoad, *conj.*, until, as long as.
 quod, *conj.*, because ; *with adverbial force*, wherefore.
 quōminus, or quo minus, *conj.*, by which the less, so that not.
 quondam, *adv.*, once.
 quoniam, *conj.*, since, seeing that.
 quoque, *conj.*, also, too.
 quot, *indecl. adj.*, how many, as many as.
 quotannis, *adv.*, annually.

R

rāmus, I, M., branch.
 rapiditās, -tātis, F., swiftness.
 rārus, a, um, scattered ; *in plur.*, in small parties.

- ratio, -ōnis, F.,** method, science ; manner, plan ; reason ;
ratus, a, um, from reor. [strategy.
rebelliō, -ōnis, F., renewal of war.
recens, -entis, new, recent ; fresh.
receptus, ūs, M., retreat.
re-cipiō, ere, -cēpi, -ceptum, get back ; welcome.
recūsō, āre, āvī, ātum, refuse ; reject.
red-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, give back ; render.
red-igī, from redigere.
red-eō, -īre, -iī (īvī), -itum, come back, return.
red-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, reduce.
reditus, ūs, M., return, returning.
re-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead back.
re-fero, referre, rettulī, relātum, bring back ; report.
re-ficiō, ere, -fēcī, -fectum, repair ; recruit.
re-fugiō, ere, -fūgī, escape.
regiō, -ōnis, F., region, district.
rēgius, a, um, royal.
regnō, āre, āvī, ātum, be king, reign.
regnum, ī, N., kingdom ; supreme power.
rego, ere, rexī, rectum, rule.
rē-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, drive back.
relātus, a, um, from refero.
relictus, a, um, from relinquo.
rēligiō, -ōnis, F., religious scruple, reverence.
re-liquō, ere, -liquī, -lictum, leave behind ; abandon.
reliquus, a, um, remaining ; future.
re-maneō, ēre, -mansī, -mansum, remain behind.
remigrō, āre, āvī, ātum, move back, return.
re-mittō, ere, -misī, -missum, send back ; relax.
remollescō, ere, become enervated.
re-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, move back, draw away ;
rēmūs, ī, M., oar. [remove, destroy.
renovō, āre, āvī, ātum, renew.
renuntiō, āre, āvī, ātum, report.
reor, rēri, ratus sum, think.
reparō, āre, āvī, ātum, build again.
re-pellō, ere, reppulī (or repulī), -pulsum, drive back,
repente, adv., suddenly. [defeat.
repentīnus, a, um, sudden.
re-periō, īre, repperī (or reperī), -pertum, find, discover.
reportō, āre, āvī, ātum, carry back.
repperī, from reperio
re-primō, ere, -pressī, -pressum, restrain, check.
repulsus, a, um, from repello.
rēs, rēī, F., thing, fact, deed, property.

re-scindō, ere, -scidi, -scissum, break down.
re-sisto, ere, -stiti, halt ; resist, *with dat.*
re-spondeō, ere, -spondi, -spōnsum, answer.
rēs publica, F., state.
respuo, ere, ui. to spit back, disdain, reject.
restiti, from resisto.
restit-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, restore ; rebuild.
re-tineō, ēre, -tinui, -tentum, detain, keep.
re-trahō, ere, -traxi, -tractum, bring back.
rettuli, from refero.
re-vertō, ere, -verti, -versum, turn back, return.
re-vertor, i, -versus sum, return, *intr. vb.*
revocō, āre, āvi, ātum, recall.
rex, rēgis, M., king.
rideō, ēre, risi, risum, laugh.
ripa, ae, F., bank.
risus, ūs, M., laughter.
rogō, āre, āvi, ātum, ask.
Rōma, ae, F., Rome.
Rōmānus, a, um, Roman ; *as subst.*, a Roman.
rūmor, -ōris, M., rumour.
rumpō, ere, rūpi, ruptum, break.
rursus, adv., again, in turn.

S

sacer, era, crum, sacred ; *n. plur. sacra orum, as subst.*,
sacrificium, i, N., sacrifice. [sacred rites.
sacrificō, āre, āvi, ātum, sacrifice.
saepe, adv. (saepius, saepissime), often.
saepio, īre, saepsi, saeptum, hedge in.
sagitta, ae, F., arrow.
saltus, ūs, M., a passage through mountains or forests.
salus, -ūtis, F., safety.
salvus, a, um, safe.
sānus, a, um, sound, sane ; **pro sano**, prudently.
sapiens, -entis, wise.
satis, enough ; quite.
satis-faciō, ere, -fēcī, -factum, make amends.
saucius, a, um, wounded.
saxum, i, N., rock.
scapha, ae, F., small boat.
scientia, ae, F., knowledge.
scindō, ere, scidi, scissum, tear down.
sciō, īre, ivi, itum, know.
scribō, ere, scripsi, scriptum, write.
scūtum, i, N., shield.

sē, *from sui*.

sēcius, *from secus*.

secundus, a, um, second ; favourable.

secus, *adv.* (*comparative, secius*), otherwise ; *nihilō secius*,

secūtus, a, um, *from sequor*.

[nevertheless.

sed, *conj.*, but.

sēdes, is, F., seat ; settlement.

sē-jungō, ere, -junxī, -junctum, separate.

sēmita, ae, F., path, lane.

semper, *adv.*, always.

senātus, ūs, M., senate ; audience.

senectus, -tūtis, F., old age.

senex, *senis*, M., old man.

sententia, ae, F., opinion ; decision.

sentio, īre, *sensī*, *sensum*, feel, perceive.

sepeliō, īre, *ivī* (ii), *sepultum*, bury.

sepultus, a, um, *from sepelio*.

sequor, I, *secūtus sum*, follow, accompany.

sermō, -ōnis, M., conversation ; language.

serō, ere, *sēvī*, *satum*, sow.

serviō, īre, *ivī* (or ii), *itum*, be a slave to ; devote one's self

servitus, -tūtis, F., slavery.

[to ; with dat.

servō, āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, save ; watch.

servus, I, M., slave.

sēsē, *from sui*.

seu, *see sive*.

sēvocō, āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, call aside.

sī, *conj.*, if.

sibi, *from sui*.

sic, *adv.*, thus ; in such a way.

siccitās, -tātis, F., dryness.

significō, āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, indicate ; signify.

signum, I, N., signal ; standard.

silentium, I, N., silence.

silvestris, e, wooded.

similis, e, like, similar.

simul, *adv.*, at the same time ; *simul atque*, or *simul alone*,

simulō, āre, *āvī*, *ātum*, pretend.

[as soon as.

sine, *prep.* with *abl.*, without.

singillatim, *adv.*, singly, one by one.

singulāris, e, extraordinary ; in *plur.*, one by one, in scattered

singulī, ae, a, one each, one by one.

[groups.

sinister, tra, trum, left.

sinō, ere, *sivī*, *situm*, allow.

situs, a, um, situated.

sive or *seu*, *conj.*, or if ; *sive . . . sive*, whether . . . or.

- socer, eri, M.**, father-in-law.
societas, -tatis, F., alliance.
socius, i, M., ally.
sōl, sōlis, M., sun.
soleō, ēre, solitus sum, be accustomed.
solitūdō, -dinis, F., solitude.
sollicitō, āre, āvī, ātum, stir up, bribe.
solum, adv., only.
solus, a, um, alone, only.
solvō, ere, solvī, solūtum, loose, free ; *with or without naves*,
soror, -ōris, F., sister. [set sail.
spatium, i, N., space, distance ; interval ; time.
speciēs, ēī, F., appearance, form.
spectāculum, i, N., spectacle.
spectō, āre, āvī, ātum, look, face.
spērō, āre, āvī, ātum, hope ; expect.
spēs, ēī, F., hope.
spoliō, āre, āvī, ātum, despoil.
stabilitās, tātis, F., steadiness.
statim, adv., immediately.
statlō, -ōnis, F., guard, outpost.
statua, ae, F., statue.
stat-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, determine.
statūra, ae, F., stature, size.
stō, āre, stetī, statum, stand.
strepitus, ūs, M., noise.
struō, ere, struxī, structum, build, raise.
studeō, ēre, uī, be eager for.
studium, i, N., zeal.
stultē, adv., foolishly.
stultitia, ae, F., folly.
sub, prep., 1. *with abl.*, under, close to ; 2. *with acc.*, close to.
subactus, a, um, from subigo.
sub-ducō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, draw off ; draw up.
subductiō, -ōnis, F., hauling on shore, beaching.
subēgī, from subigo.
sub-eō, -īre, -īī (īvī), -itum, draw near, enter ; encounter.
sub-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, subdue.
subitō, adv., suddenly.
subitus, a, um, sudden.
sub-jiciō, ere, -jēcī, -jectum, place beneath, expose.
sublātus, a, um, from tollo.
subministrō, āre, āvī, ātum, supply.
sub-mittō, ere, -mīsī, -missum, send to one's aid.
sub-moveō, ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, drive off or away.
sub-sequor, i, -secūtus sum, follow up.

- subsidiū, i, N.,** aid ; reinforcements.
sub-sum, -esse, -fuī, be near.
sub-veniō, ire, -vênī, -ventum, aid (*with dat.*).
suc-cēdō, ere, -cessī, -cessum, take the place of, *with dat.* ; approach, adjoin.
suc-cīdō, ere, -cīdī, -cīsum, cut down.
suc-currō, ere, -currī, -cursum, run to aid (*with dat.*).
sudes or sudis, is, F., stake.
suffragium, i, N., vote.
sui, sibi, sē, or sēsē, reflex. pron., himself, herself, itself, themselves.
summa, ae, F., total ; chief part ; management ; chiefly *with imperii.*
summus, a, um, superlative of *superus*, highest, greatest ; top of.
sūmō, ere, sumpsī, sumptum, take ; obtain.
superbus, a, um, proud.
superior, ius, comparative of superus, higher ; former ; superior.
superō, āre, āvī, ātum, conquer ; excel.
super-sum, -esse, -fuī, be left ; survive.
supplicātiō, -ōnis, F., thanksgiving.
supplicium, i, N., punishment ; torture.
suprā, adv., and prep. with acc., above ; over.
sus-cipiō, ere, -cēpī, -ceptum, undertake.
suspiciō, -ōnis, F., suspicion.
suspikor, āri, ātus sum, suspect.
sus-tineō, ēre, -tinuī, -tentum, withstand ; holds one's own.
sustuli, from tollo.
suus, a, um, his, her, its, their.

T

- tālea, ae, F.,** bar, rod.
talentum, i, N., talent, a sum of money.
tālis, e, such.
tam, adv., so, so much ; **tam . . . quam,** as or so (much) . . . as.
tamen, adv., nevertheless.
tamquam, adv., as if.
tandem, adv., at length.
tangō, ere, tetigī, tactum, touch ; reach ; border on.
tantulus, a, um, so small.
tantum, adv., only.
tantus, a, um, so great, so much ; as great, as much.
tardē, adv., slowly.
tectum, i, N., roof, abode.

- tegō, ere, texi, tectum, cover ; protect.**
tēlum, I, N., weapon, dart.
temere, adv., rashly, without good reason.
tēmō, -ōnis, M., pole (of a vehicle).
temperantia, ae, F., self-control.
temperō, are, avi, atum, control.
tempestās, -tātis, F., weather ; tempest.
templum, I, N., temple.
temptō, or tento, āre, avi, atum, try, tempt.
tempus, -ōris, N., time ; period ; opportunity ; crisis.
teneō, ēre, ui, tentum, hold, keep ; detain.
tento, see tempto.
tergum, I, N., back, rear ; tergum vertere, or dare, take to flight ; a tergo, in the rear.
terra, ae, F., earth, land ; in terris, in the world.
terreō, ēre, ui, itum, alarm.
terrestris, e, land, of the land.
territō, āre, avi, atum, frighten.
terror, -ōris, M., terror, panic.
tertius, a, um, third.
testor, āri, ātus sum, declare.
testūdō, -dinis, F., testudo.
timeō, ēre, ui, fear, be afraid.
timor, -ōris, M., fear, dread, panic.
tollō, ere, sustulī, sublātum, raise ; remove ; destroy.
tortum, I, N., engine.
tot, indeclinable, so many.
totidem, indeclinable, just as many.
tōtus, a, um, whole.
trā-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, hand over, surrender ; hand down.
trā-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead across ; lead through.
trājectus, ūs, M., crossing, passage.
tranquillitās, -tātis, F., calm.
trans, prep. with acc., across, over.
transactus, a, um, from transigo.
trans-dūcō, ere, -duxī, -ductum, lead across.
trans-eō, īre, -iī (-īvī), -itum, cross.
trans-ferō, ferre, -tuli, -lātum, transfer.
trans-igō, ere, -ēgī, -actum, complete.
transitus, ūs, M., passing over, crossing.
translātus, from transfero.
transmissus, ūs, M., passage.
transportō, āre, avi, atum, carry, or take over.
trepidō, āre, avi, atum, be in a panic.
trepidus, a, um, terrified.
tribūnus, I, M., tribune.

trib-uō, ere, -uī, -ūtum, grant ; ascribe.
 trīduum, i, N., a space of three days.
 triennium, i, N., a space of three years.
 tripartitō, *adv.*, in three divisions.
 tripl-ex, -eīs, triple.
 tristis, e, sad.
 trucīdō, āre, āvī, ātum, slaughter.
 tuba, ae, F., trumpet.
 tueor, ēri, tūtus (*or* tultus) sum, protect.
 tull, *from* fero.
 tum, *adv.*, then ; cum . . . tum, both . . . and.
 tumulus, i, M., hill.
 turma, ae, F., squadron.
 turpis, e, disgraceful.
 turpitude, inis, F., disgrace.
 turris, is, F., tower.
 tūtō, *adv.*, safely.
 tūtor, āri, ātus sum, guard, defend.
 tūtus, a, um, safe.

U

ūber, eris, fruitful, copious, ready.
 ubi, *adv.*, when, where.
 ulciscor, I, ultus sum, punish, avenge.
 ullus, a, um, any.
 ulterior, ius, *comparative*, farther.
 ultimus, a, um, *superlative*, farthest.
 ultrō, *adv.*, voluntarily, with provocation.
 umquam, *adv.*, ever.
 ūnā, *adv.*, at the same time, together.
 unde, *adv.*, whence.
 undique, *adv.*, on all sides.
 ūniversus, a, um, all together, in a body.
 ūnus, a, um, one ; only.
 urbs, urbis, F., city.
 urgeō, ēre, ursī, press hard ; *in pass.*, be hard pressed.
 usque, *adv.*, even, as far as ; always.
 ūsus, a, um, *from* utor.
 ūsus, ūs, M., use, experience ; advantage, need.
 ut *or* uti, that, in order that, so that ; as ; how ; when.
 uter, utra, utrum, which (*of two*).
 uterque, utraque, utrumque, each (*of two*), both.
 uti, *see* ut.
 ūtilis, e, useful.
 ūtilitās, -tātis, F., advantage, utility.
 ūtor, I, ūsus, sum, use, employ ; adopt, *with abl.*
 uxor, ōris, F., wife.

V

- vacō, āre, āvī, ātum, lie waste.
 vacuus, a, um, empty
 vādō, ere, go, advance.
 vadum, I, N., ford, shallow.
 vāgor, ārī, ātus sum, roam about. .
 valeō, ēre, uī, itum, be powerful, have weight ; *mean*.
 vallēs, is, F., valley.
 vallum, i, N., rampart.
 varius, a, um, different, varied.
 vasto, āre, āvī, ātum, lay waste.
 vastus, a, um, immense, vast.
 vectigal, -ālis, N., tax.
 vectīgālis, e, tributary.
 vectōrius, a, um, for carrying.
 vehementer, *adv.*, vigorously.
 vehō, ere, vexī, vectum, carry ; *in pass.*, ride, sail.
 vel, *conj.*, or ; vel . . . vel, either . . . or.
 velle, *from volo*.
 vēlum, i, N., sail.
 velut or veluti, *adv.*, just as if.
 ven-dō, ere, -didī, -ditum, sell.
 venia, ae, F., pardon, favour.
 veniō, ire, vēnī, ventum, come.
 ventitō, āre, āvī, ātum, come often.
 ventus, ī, M, wind.
 vēr, vēris, N., spring.
 verbum, i, N., word ; verba dāre, deceive ; verba facere, speak.
 vērē, *adv*, truly.
 vereor, ēri, itus sum, fear.
 vergō, ere, lie, face.
 vērō, *adv.*, in truth ; but, moreover.
 versor, ārī, ātus sum, be engaged in ; live.
 ver-tō, ere, -tī, -sum, turn.
 vērum, *conj.*, however, but.
 vērus, a, um, true.
 vester, tra, trum, your.
 vestigium, i, N., foot-print, mark, spot.
 vestiō, ire, ivī, itum, clothe.
 vestitus, us, M., clothing.
 vestis, is, F, clothing ; garment.
 vet-ō, āre, -uī, -itum, forbid.
 vet-us, -eris, old.
 vexillum, i, N., flag.
 vexō, āre, āvī, ātum, ravage, oppress.

vī, *from vīs*.

via, ae, F., way, route.

viātor, -ōris, M., traveller.

vicī, *from vinco*.

victoria, ae, F., victory.

victus, a, um, *from vinco*.

victus, ūs, M., life, living.

vīcus, ī, M., village.

videō, ēre, **vidī**, **vīsum**, see ; *in pass.*, be seen, seem, seem
[good.]

vigor, -ōris, M., strength.

vinciō, īre, **vinxī**, **vinctum**, bind.

vincō, ere, **vicī**, **victum**, conquer.

vinctus, a, um, *from vincio*.

vinculum, ī, N., chain.

vīnum, ī, N., wine.

vir, **virī**, M., man.

vīres, ium, *from vis*.

virgo, -ginis, F., maiden.

virtus, -tūtis, F., bravery ; virtue ; energy.

vis, vim, **vi**, *plur.*, **vires**, ium, F., force, might ; *plur.*,
[strength.]

vīsus, a, um, *from video*.

vīsus, ūs, M., sight, spectacle.

vīta, ae, F., life.

vitium, ī, N., fault.

vītō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, avoid.

vīvō, ere, **vixī**, **victum**, live.

vīvus, a, um, alive.

vix, *adv.*, scarcely.

vixī, *from vivo*.

vocō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, call, invite.

volō, velle, **volui**, wish, be willing.

voluntās, -tātis, F., wish, good-will.

voluptās, -tātis, F., pleasure.

vox, **vōcis**, F., voice.

vulgus, ī, N., the common people.

vulnerō, āre, **āvī**, **ātum**, wound.

vulnus, -eris, N., wound ; blow.

vultus, ūs, M., look ; countenance.

INDEX.

N = footnote. The superior numbers refer to the number of the note. Other numbers designate the pages.

Ablative Absolute, 108.

Abstract Terms, 218.

Accusative and Infinitive, 74, 78, 82, 163.

Accusative with Future Infinitive, 117 N².

Adjectives, Declension and Comparison, see Appendix, 252.

Agent, 16, 136.

Asking, Verbs of, etc., 37, 39, 43, 85.

Cases :

Nominative, 186.

Genitive, 9, 192.

Dative, 197.

Accusative, 10 N², 188.

Vocative } see Appendix, 252.

Locative }

Ablative, 14, 16, 201.

Commands, 220.

Conditions, 160.

Conjugation of Verbs, see Appendix, 246-249.

Conjunctions :

cum, 28, 65, 156.

et, 30 N⁴.

dum, 87 N¹, 158.

priusquam, 158.

quod, 90 N¹.

atque, 179 N³.

que, 179 N⁴.

quin, 187 N².

Connectives, 215.

Dependent Questions, 139.

Emphasis, 100 N³, 145 N¹.

Exhortations, wishes, etc., 220.

Fearing, Verbs of, 89.

Gender, 93, 98.

Gerund, 129.

Gerundive, 132, 136.

Historic Present, 42 N¹.

Idioms, 224.

Imperative, 220.

Imperfect Indicative, 21 N¹.

Impersonal Construction, 148, 149, 151.

Indirect Narration :

Mood, 163, 165.

Tense, 167.

Pronouns and Adverbs, 168.

Reflexives, 170.

Conditional Sentence, 171.

Virtual Indirect Narration, 174.

Jubeo, 39.

Means, Instrument, 35.

Model Sentence, 210.

Nouns, Declension of, see Appendix, 250-252.

Participles :

Present, 126.

Perfect, 107.

Present Indicative, 12 N⁴.

Praeficio, infero, impero, 146.

Period, Analysis of, 120 N², 122 N⁵, 160 N³, 207, 213 N³.

Position of Words, 207-218.

Possum, used impersonally, 150 N².

Pronouns, Declension of, 141, 152, 153, 154, 227.

Purpose, 22, 182.

Relative Pronouns, 141, 142, 144.

Result, 96 N¹, 181.

Sequence of Tenses, 180.

Superlative Degree, 102.

Supine, 105.

Tenses of Indicative, 176.

“ “ Infinitive, 184.

Time :

Duration of, 48.

Point of, 74.

Transitive Verbs Used Intransitively, 222.

